

3 1761 06235186 1



SPECIMEN



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007

EX LIBRIS
JOHANNIS FLETCHER

PER DUO ET VIGINTI
ANNOS LINGUAE LATINAE IN COLLEGIO
UNIVERSITATIS

PROFESSORIS: QUI MENSE JULIO
A.D. MDCCCXVII MORTUUS EST:

LIBROS QUOS ILLE PENITUS AMAVERAT
UXOR ET FILII EJUS COLLEGIO AMATO
DONAVERUNT.

DULCES EXUVIAE DUM FATA DEUS-QUE SINEBANT.

—*Virg: Æn: IV.*

MACMILLAN'S LATIN COURSE

THIRD PART



al-Gr
P1975m

MACMILLAN'S
LATIN COURSE
THIRD PART

EASY EXERCISES IN CONTINUOUS PROSE

BY

W. E. P. PANTIN, M.A.

ASSISTANT MASTER AT ST. PAUL'S SCHOOL

182098
6.7.23.



London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

1901

PREFACE

BEFORE using this book the student should at least have had some practice in putting into Latin easy sentences illustrating the use of the accusative and infinitive, gerund and gerundive, *ut* and *ne*, *cum*, *si*, etc. Some of these subjects are treated afresh, but the sentences will be found too hard for the beginner, at any rate for the young beginner.

An acquaintance with the earlier volumes of this Course is not necessary.

My object has been to produce a set of easy exercises in continuous prose, to give practice in those words, constructions and idioms, which occur on every page of Cicero and Caesar, and so to enable the student to read these authors with some ease.

When I had finished my continuous pieces, I found that there were certain difficulties which recurred in most of them. The principal difficulties were connected with the use of the participles, of the infinitive and subjunctive in *Oratio obliqua*, of some of the pronouns, of the gerund and gerundive, of the tenses

in subordinate clauses, of *si*, *cum*, and a few other conjunctions. Most of these subjects had been treated in a very elementary way in Part II. of this Course, but the student had not been carried far enough to enable him to deal with the continuous exercises. I therefore wrote some thirty exercises of detached sentences, which are intended to lead up to the continuous exercises. These earlier exercises are more difficult, and at the same time, I hope, more interesting, than exercises of detached sentences generally are. I venture to suggest that it may be worth while to take a pupil through them two or three times, so that he may become quite familiar with the rules and able to apply them without any considerable effort.

I hope that the book may prove useful not only for younger boys, but also for those elder boys and girls who begin Latin rather late and cannot give much time to the study of the language. For them the important thing is that they should acquire as rapidly as possible the power to read ordinary Latin prose without great difficulty. I think that something may be done to help them by excluding everything that is not quite common, and by giving plenty of practice in dealing with all those difficulties which are of frequent occurrence. It is waste of time to give them an exercise on *Macte virtute*, for example, or the use of the infinitive in rhetorical questions in *Oratio obliqua*, for they will very likely never come across

an instance of either. What they need is such familiarity with common constructions as will make a sentence like the following easy and pleasant to read: *Cuius sermone ita tum cupide fruebar, quasi iam divinarem, id quod evenit, illo extincto fore, unde discerem, neminem.*

I owe a great deal to the Latin Grammar of Gildersleeve and Lodge. For explaining grammatical subtleties in clear and forcible language this book is, it seems to me, unrivalled. I have found the numerous examples in Dräger, and in Kühner, useful. I have also used constantly Merguet's Lexicons, (1) to the Speeches, and (2) to the Philosophical Writings, of Cicero.

I should like to express my gratitude to my colleague, Mr. A. M. Cook, who has kindly looked through my work from time to time and helped me by his encouragement and advice.

CONTENTS

| SECTION | PAGE |
|--|------|
| 1-30. Miscellaneous | 1 |
| 31-32. The connecting relative | 22 |
| 33-35. <i>se</i> and <i>cum</i> | 24 |
| EXERCISE 1 | 27 |
| 36-51. Pronouns and the adverbs connected with them . | 29 |
| (<i>Qui, quis, cur, quando, etc., 36-40: quisquam</i> <i>and ullus, 41; quivis, 42; aliquis, quidam,</i> <i>quondam, 43, 44; quisquis, quicumque, 45;</i> <i>quisque, 46; ipse, 47; idem, 48)</i> | |
| EXERCISE 2 | 38 |
| 52-58. The tenses | 41 |
| (The tenses classified, 52; general rule for tenses in subordinate sentences, 53; general rule applied to iterative sentences, 54; general rule applied to conditional sentences with the indicative, 55; general rule applied to <i>cum</i> sentences with the indicative, 56; <i>iam diu</i> with the present, 58) | |
| EXERCISE 3 | 49 |
| 59-64. Temporal sentences (<i>ubi, simul ac, postquam, prius-</i> <i>quam, dum</i>) | 51 |
| EXERCISE 4 | 55 |
| 65-72. The conjunction <i>cum</i> | 57 |
| EXERCISE 5 | 62 |
| 73-79. The participles (examples in 77) | 65 |
| EXERCISES 6-8 | 73 |

| SECTION | PAGE |
|---|------|
| 80-82. The infinitive, gerund, and gerundive. (The English verbal substantive in -ing: <i>ars scribendi</i> , the art of writing) | 79 |
| EXERCISE 9 | 83 |
| 83-89. The gerund and gerundive used as predicates (<i>scribendum est</i> , I must write) | 85 |
| EXERCISES 10, 11 | 90 |
| 90-95. The infinitive as subject (Predicative genitive) | 94 |
| EXERCISE 12 | 98 |
| 96-99. The infinitive as subject (Impersonal verbs: <i>deceat, oportet, interest</i> , etc.) | 100 |
| EXERCISE 13 | 103 |
| 100. The infinitive as subject (Impersonal verbs with dative: <i>licet</i> , etc.) | 105 |
| EXERCISE 14 | 107 |
| 101-02. The infinitive as object | 109 |
| 103. Verbs with which the nominative and infinitive may be used (<i>nolo ire solus</i>) | 110 |
| 104. <i>Iubeo, veto</i> , etc. | 111 |
| 105. Some verbs which admit of various constructions (<i>scio, volo, timco, dubito, constituo, disco</i>) | 112 |
| EXERCISE 15 | 115 |
| 106-13. The infinitive with verbs of saying and thinking | 117 |
| 114. The future infinitive active and passive | 122 |
| EXERCISE 16 | 124 |
| 115-19. Conditional sentences | 127 |
| EXERCISE 17 | 130 |
| 120-23. The potential subjunctive (<i>scire velim</i>) | 132 |
| EXERCISE 18 | 135 |
| 124-25. Commands and prohibitions | 137 |
| 126-28. Exhortations (<i>eamus</i> , let us go) | 139 |
| 129-30. Wishes (<i>Utinam veniat</i>) | 140 |
| EXERCISE 19 | 142 |
| 131-52. Oratio obliqua | 144 |
| EXERCISES 20-26 | 157 |

CONTENTS

XI

| SECTION | PAGE |
|---|------|
| 153-58. The subjunctive in relative clauses (<i>Nihil est cur doleas, Dignus est quem imiteris</i> , etc.) . . . | 171 |
| EXERCISE 27 | 174 |
| 159-62. Causal sentences— <i>Quod</i> meaning "as to the fact that" | 176 |
| EXERCISE 28 | 179 |
| 163-67. The Calendar | 181 |
| EXERCISE 29 | 184 |
| 168. Hints on the connection of sentences | 185 |
| EXERCISES IN CONTINUOUS PROSE | 186 |
| ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY | 277 |
| IRREGULAR VERBS | 304 |
| NUMERALS | 308 |

TO THE STUDENT

FIRST look through Sections 1-30. Sections 1-13 contain information on some elementary matters, with which you will be more or less familiar. Sections 14-30 contain short notes on some of the subjects which are treated more fully later on in the book. These short notes will help you to find your way about the book. You will also find the Table of Contents useful.

Then read carefully Sections 31-35, study the examples with a view to imitating them, and begin Exercise 1. The dictionary at the end of the book contains all the words which are really necessary. Try to think of the words for yourself: do not become dependent on the dictionary, or you will be helpless without it. A good deal is left to your intelligence, especially in the later exercises. For example, if you look up 'peril' you will not find it, but if you think what it means, the words 'danger' and 'periculum' will occur to you. If you do not find 'accompanied by,' you may supply its place by using the preposition *cum*; and so on.

Do not be satisfied when you have found out the correct words and given them correct terminations. Consider whether the sentence sounds like a Latin sentence, and go through it again and again till you are satisfied that it does. The words may be right and the sentence intelligible, and yet it may be a sentence which no Latin writer could have written. Study the order of words, the connection of sentences, etc., in the examples and in your reading.

After the dictionary you will find a list of irregular verbs, and the numerals. Read the note on p. 276 on the marking of the quantities in the dictionary.

The reference is always by sections (unless otherwise stated): for instance, 'see 77' means see section 77, which is on p. 68.

I

1. WHEN? WITHIN WHAT TIME? FOR HOW LONG?

(a) The ablative answers the questions When? On what day? At what hour? In what year or month?

Eodem die, *The same day.*

superioribus diebus, *in earlier days.*

quarta hora, *at the fourth hour.*

illo anno, *in that year.*

hac ipsa nocte, *this very night.*

(b) The ablative answers the question Within what time?

Paucis diebus aderit, *He will be here in a few days.*

Quattuor diebus capietur, *It will be taken within four days.*

(c) The accusative answers the question For how long?

Duo annos in carcere erat, *He was two years in prison.*

2. WHERE FROM? WHERE TO? WHERE?

Use a preposition with all common nouns and with the names of countries :

ab urbe venio—in agros ibo—in templo est ;
e Gallia venio—in Italiam ibo—in Britannia est.

Use no preposition with the name of a town or small island :

Roma venio—Romam ibo—Romae est ;
Rhodo (*from Rhodes*)—Rhodum (*to Rhodes*)—
Rhodi (*at Rhodes*).

The town *at which* is put in the ablative unless it is a singular word of the first or second declension, when it is put in the genitive : *Corinthis, Athenis, Carthagine*.

Use no preposition with *domus* and *rus*.

The name of a town is often used in apposition to *urbs* or *oppidum* :

Ab urbe Roma, *from the city of Rome*—in oppidum
Puteolos, *to the town Puteoli*—in urbe Roma,
in the city of Rome.

The Latin idiom differs from the English in such sentences as the following :

He came to me in the city, Ad me in urbem (*into the city*) venit.

He came to me at Rome, Ad me Romam venit.

Use *quo* for 'where?' *eo* for 'there,' *huc* for 'here,' if motion to the place is meant :

Quo vadis? *Where are you going?*

Eo rediit, *He returned there*.

Huc veni, *Come here*.

3. INTRANSITIVE VERBS HAVE IMPERSONAL PASSIVE

A verb is used transitively when it governs an accusative of the direct object : *vinco hostem*, I conquer my enemy.

A verb is used intransitively when the action does not go beyond the subject : *dormio*, I sleep.

A verb used transitively in the active voice has a personal passive ; the object of the active verb is the subject of the passive : (a) active, *vinco hostem* : (b) passive, *hostis vincitur* : in (a) *hostem* is object, in (b) *hostis* is subject.

A verb used intransitively in the active voice has an impersonal passive in Latin : *dormio*, I sleep ; *dormitur*, sleep is going on ; *dormitum est*, sleep is done. As we have no impersonal passive in English, we cannot translate *dormitur*, etc. literally : we cannot say 'it is being slept.'

Many intransitive verbs govern a dative of the indirect object. Like other intransitive verbs they are used impersonally in the passive ; the dative remains unchanged :

Parco tibi, I am lenient to you, I spare you.

Parcitur tibi, Leniency is shown to you, You are spared.

Many of these verbs are transitive in English : hence the very common mistake of supposing they are transitive in Latin. This is the more natural because the impersonal use of the passive is not found in English, and it requires a considerable effort to make

the mind familiar with it. A few more examples may help you to avoid blunders:

Creditur mihi, *I am believed.*

Ignoscetur tibi, *You will be forgiven.*

Persuasum est mihi, *I have been persuaded, I am convinced.*

Note especially the use of the gerund: *credendum est Caesari a nobis.* The agent must be expressed by *a*, *ab* and the ablative; for two datives would be ambiguous. (See 87.)

4. COPULATIVE VERBS

The following verbs among others may be used with two nominatives, one of the subject, the other of the predicate: *sum*, I am; *videor*, I seem; *nascor*, I am born; *evado*, I turn out; *creor*, *nominor*, I am appointed; *putor*, *existimor*, *habeor*, I am considered; *appellor*, *dicor*, I am called; *fio*, I am made.

Cicero creatus est consul, *Cicero was appointed consul.*

Ille putatur bonus vir, *He is considered a good man.*

Imperator certior factus est, *The general was informed.*

When the copulative verb is in the infinitive with *possum*, *volo* and similar verbs (see 103) the predicate remains in the nominative:

Malet existimari bonus vir, *He will prefer to be considered a good man.*

Socrates parens philosophiae iure dici potest,
*Socrates may with justice be called the father of
 philosophy.*

Dionysius fortis esse didicerat, *Dionysius had been
 taught to be courageous, or, had learned to be
 courageous.*

5. QUESTIONS. I. Direct

1. *Simple Questions with num, -ne, nonne :*

Num fecisti? *Did you really do it?* [*Surely
 you didn't?*]. Nonne fecisti? *Didn't you do it?*
 [*Surely you did?*] Fecistine? *Did you do it?* [*Tell
 me: I want to know.*]

Num expects the answer 'No.' *Nonne* expects the
 answer 'Yes.' *-ne* is appended to the most emphatic
 word in a question asked for information; the answer
 is not implied. The most emphatic word is generally
 placed first:

Interfecisti-ne omnes? *Did you kill them all?*

Omnes-ne interfecisti? *Did you kill them all?*

2. *Double Questions: utrum and an :*

Utrum vicisti an victus es?

Utrum vicisti annon?

3. Questions may also be introduced by such words
 as *Quis? Cur? Unde?* See 37.

The Mood in a Direct Question

4. Direct questions have the verb in the indicative if the expected answer would have the verb in the indicative, as is the case with all the above sentences. The subjunctive is used where the answer would be in the subjunctive or imperative :

Si ad te venissem, quid fecisses ? Tecum profectus essem, *If I had come to you, what would you have done ? I should have started with you.*

Quid faciam ? Redi, *What am I to do ? Go back.*

Utrum hostibus resistamus an nos dedamus ? Resistamus, *Must (Shall) we resist or surrender ? Let us resist.*

6. QUESTIONS. II. Indirect

The verb in an indirect question is in the subjunctive. In a simple indirect question 'whether' may be translated by *num* or *-ne*: *num* does not imply that the answer to the question must be 'No.'

Scire velim num redierit, *I should like to know whether he has come back.*

Ex me quaesivit posset-ne fieri, *He asked me whether (or, if) it was possible.*

Note. The word 'if' introducing a question (= 'whether') must not be translated by *si*.

Just as the future infinitive is made up of the future participle with *esse*, so the future subjunctive

in indirect questions is made up of the future participle with *sim* or *essem* :

Quaesivi num moriturus esset, *I asked whether he would die.*

Considerabimus quid fecerit, quid faciat, quid facturum sit, *We will consider what he has done, what he is doing, what he is going to do (will do).*

In a double indirect question 'whether' may be translated by *utrum* or *-ne*; 'or' by *an*; 'or not' by *nec-ne* :

Scire velim utrum vicerit an victus sit (Scire velim vicerit-ne an victus sit), *I should like to know whether he has won or lost.*

Nihil interest utrum rescribas necne, *It doesn't matter whether you write back or not.*

7. HOW TO EXPRESS A CONSEQUENCE

To express a result or consequence use *ut*, *ut . . . non*, *ut . . . nemo*, *ut . . . nihil*, *ut . . . numquam* (not *ne*, *nequis*, *nequid*, *nequando* etc.).

Tanta erat tempestas ut nemo posset solvere, *The storm was so violent that no one could set sail.*

Tam paucae erant naves ut redire non possent, *There were so few ships that they could not return.*

Contrast the next example.

8. HOW TO EXPRESS A PURPOSE

To express a purpose use (1) *ut, ne, nequis*, etc. (not *ut . . . non, ut nemo, ut nihil* etc.).

Ne in patriam redire possent, naves incendit, He burned the ships that they might not be able to return to their country.

In final clauses (i.e. clauses expressing a purpose) *ne-ve*, not *neque*, is used for 'and not.'

Id ut efficerent ne-ve desperarent, metum dissimulavit, that they might effect this and not lose hope, he concealed his fear.

Ne = 'lest'; you can introduce 'lest' in final clauses in English, but not in consequence-clauses.

(2) The relative pronoun (*qui*) may also be used to express a purpose: *qui* is then equivalent to *ut is*.

Misimus qui quaererent, We sent some men to find out (We sent men who might find out).

Use *qui* instead of *ut* when the sense allows (i.e. when *ut is* makes sense); for instance—

He sent two ships to protect the city, Duas naves misit quae (not ut) urbi praesidio essent.

See **156** for further examples.

(3) *Quo* (the ablative of *qui*) is used with comparatives:

Quo facilius intellegatis, epistulam legam, That you may understand the more easily, I will read the letter.

Quo is equivalent to *ut eo*, 'in order that,' 'by this means.'

(4) A purpose is also sometimes expressed by the gerund or gerundive followed by *causā* (the abl. of *causa*, 'cause,' 'reason'):

In Asiam venit negotiandi causa, *He came to Asia in pursuit of his business* (lit. *for the sake of carrying on his business*).

Navium reficiendarum causa, *In order to repair his ships*.

(5) The supine in *-um* is also sometimes used, but only with verbs of motion:

Venerunt oratum regem ut sibi subveniret, *They came to beg the king to help them*.

9. THE RELATIVE EXPRESSING A TENDENCY OR RESULT

Qui with the subjunctive may be equivalent to *ut is* or *talis ut is*:

Nemo tam sapiens est qui sciat omnia, *No one is so wise as to know everything*,

or simply

Nemo est qui sciat omnia, *There is no one who knows (i.e. such that he knows) everything*.

This use of the relative is specially common after *Sunt qui*, *Nemo est qui*:

Sunt qui dicant, *Some people say* (*There are some who say*).

See further examples in 157-58.

10. VERBS FOLLOWED BY UT

The following verbs among others may be followed by *ut*.

(a) *ut* final; negative *ne*: in English we use the infinitive with the corresponding verbs: I urge (order, beg etc.) you to come, *Hortor (impero, oro) ut venias*, I urge (order etc.) you not to come, *Hortor (impero etc.) ne venias*.

| | |
|-------------|----------------|
| peto a te | persuadeo tibi |
| oro te | impero tibi |
| hortor te | praecipio tibi |
| moneo te | edico tibi |
| suadeo tibi | |

All these verbs mean to try to induce a man to do or to avoid doing so and so. Some of them may take other constructions with different meaning, for example:

- i. *Moneo te ut audias, I advise you to listen.*
- ii. *Moneo te eum iam ad oceanum pervenisse, I warn you that he has already reached the ocean.*

In i. *moneo* takes *ut* because it means 'I try to make you listen,' in ii. it takes the accusative and infinitive because it means 'I inform you that he has reached the ocean.' In i. the *ut* clause expresses my purpose in speaking (my object is to make you listen). In ii. the accusative and infinitive reports what I say (I say *iam ad oceanum pervenit*).

Note that where we use our infinitive with these verbs the Latin has *ut* (as in i.): where we use 'that' the Latin has the infinitive (as in ii.).

(b) *ut* consecutive or explanatory: negative *non*.

Accidit, it happens, it chances.

fieri potest, factum est etc., it is possible that, the result was that etc.

I happened to see him, Accidit ut eum viderem.

11. QUIN

The following expressions among others are followed by *quin*. They are all negative statements or questions implying a negative answer:

Nemo est.

Non recuso.

Quis est?

Non obsto.

Non dubito.

Me retinere non possum.

Quis est quin sciat? Who is there who does not know?

Recusare non possum quin venias, I cannot object to your coming.

Non dubito quin venturus sit, I have no doubt that he will come.

12. QUOMINUS

Quominus follows *impedio*, *deterreo* and some other verbs of hindering :

Reges impediendi sunt quominus Parthis sub-
veniant, *The kings must be prevented from
helping the Parthians.*

Quominus = *quo minus* : *quo*, 'by which means' is equivalent to *ut eo*, 'that by this means' : *minus*, 'to a less extent, not at all.'

Quid obstat quominus sit beatus, *What prevents
his being happy* (what stands in the way so that
in consequence thereof he should the less be
happy ?).

13. SEQUENCE OF TENSES

The rule of sequence is: Primary tenses of the subjunctive follow primary tenses of the indicative, historic tenses of the subjunctive follow historic tenses of the indicative.

The Primary Tenses are

| <i>in the Indicative</i> | <i>in the Subjunctive</i> |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| Present. | Present. |
| Future and Future Perfect. | Perfect. |

The Historic Tenses are

| <i>in the Indicative</i> | <i>in the Subjunctive</i> |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| Imperfect. | Imperfect. |
| Perfect. | Pluperfect. |
| Pluperfect. | |

Note that the historic tenses correspond to the Greek augmented tenses.

The primary tenses have to do with the present and the future, the historic tenses with the past. Hence the imperative mood is, of course, primary.

14. *Tense in subordinate clause*

1. Latin is more exact than English in the use of the tenses in subordinate clauses :

Si quid iussisti, efficimus, *If you give (i.e. have given) any order, we carry it out.*

Si quid iusseras efficiebamus, *If you gave (i.e. had given) any order, we used to carry it out.*

As a practical rule, if you can introduce the more exact expression (such as 'if you have given,' 'if you had given,' 'if you shall have given') in the English without altering the sense, you must use one of the tenses of completion (perfect, pluperfect or future perfect) in the Latin.

2. If a subordinate clause refers to the future, a future tense must be used in Latin :

Veniet, si valebit, *He will come if he is well (i.e. if he shall be well).*

Veniet si iussero, *He will come if I bid him to (i.e. if I shall have bidden him).*

See 52-57.

15. *Iam diu etc. with Present*

The present is used of an action commenced long ago and still continuing, especially with *iam* and *iam diu*.

Iam diu exspecto litteras, I have long been expecting a letter (and am still expecting).

See 58.

16. *Postquam etc. with the Perfect*

Note the common use of the perfect tense (where in accordance with the rule given in 14 we should expect the pluperfect) with *ubi*, *ut*, *postquam*, *priusquam*, *simul ac*:

Postquam a nobis discessit, interfectus est, After he (had) left us he was murdered.

See 60.

17. *Dum with the Present Indicative*

Dum takes the present indicative when it means 'during the time that,' 'in the course of the time that':

Dum haec geruntur, (interea) nuntiatum est, While this was going on (In the course of these proceedings), a message was brought.

See 62.

18. *Dum, 'until,' with Subjunctive*

Dum, 'until,' takes the subjunctive if there is any reference to the future, or any sense of purpose or expectation. Hence very often with *exspecto* and similar verbs :

Exspectandum est dum redeat, *We must wait till he returns, or, for him to return.*

See 64.

19. *The Conjunction Cum*

Cum, 'when,' takes the future or future perfect indicative.

Cum, 'when,' takes the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive.

Cum, meaning 'since,' 'as,' 'seeing that,' 'although,' takes the subjunctive. See 65-72.

20. *The English Present Participle*

The present participle can only be used in Latin of an action contemporaneous with that of the leading verb. It is correct to write :

Flens oravit auxilium for '*Shedding tears he begged for help,*'

for he was shedding tears while he was speaking. But it would not be correct to write :

Surgens discessit for '*Rising up he went away,*' for he did not go while he was rising, but after he had risen. We should therefore write :

Cum surrexisset discessit.

21. We use our present participle in a causal sense : Being hungry (i.e. as he was hungry) he asked for food.

The participle thus used should be translated into Latin by (1) *cum* with the subjunctive, *Cum esuriret*, As he was hungry, or (2) by the past participle of a deponent verb, *Veritus*, Being afraid. See **74, 78, 79.**

22. *The English Past Participle*

There is no past participle active in Latin. Its place is supplied (1) sometimes by the use of the passive participle, (2) sometimes by using *cum* with the subjunctive, sometimes in other ways.

- (1) *a. Having conquered his enemy he departed.*
Hoste victo discessit (*His enemy having been conquered*).
- b. Having conquered his enemy he killed him.*
Hostem victum interfecit (*He killed his conquered enemy*).

Beware of writing the ablative absolute when, as in (b), the participle may be brought into the sentence in some other way.

- (2) *a. Having conquered his enemy he departed, Cum*
hostem vicisset, discessit.
- b. Having arrived there he had dinner, Quo*
cum venisset cenavit.

Beware of using *victus* for 'having conquered,' or *ventus* (= 'the wind') for 'having come.'

See **77** for examples of the use of the participles.

23. *The Gerund and Gerundive*

I. The gerund and gerundive are used to translate our verbal substantive in *-ing*, in the accusative after a preposition, in the genitive, dative, and ablative. The gerund is used as the intransitive form, and as the transitive form when the object is a neuter adjective or pronoun; the gerund is not used to govern a substantive in the accusative: it is replaced by the gerundive, which attracts the substantive into its own case.

| | |
|---------------|--|
| acc. | ad scribendum (multa, aliquid), <i>With a view to writing.</i> |
| | ad scribendam epistulam. |
| gen. | ars scribendi. |
| | ars scribendarum epistularum. |
| dat. and abl. | scribendo. |
| | scribendis epistulis. |

The nominative and the accusative without a preposition are supplied by the infinitive :

| | |
|------|--|
| nom. | scribere est molestum, <i>Writing is troublesome.</i> |
| acc. | nolo scribere, <i>I don't want to write, I don't like writing.</i> |

See 80-82.

II. They are used as predicates to express obligation or necessity or some similar idea. The nominative and accusative are the only possible cases :

Moriendum est omnibus, *We must all die.*

Expectandae sunt naves (tibi), *You must wait for the ships.*

Versus mihi dedit rescribendos, *He gave me my verses to write out again.*

See 83-89.

24. *The Infinitive with the Accusative*

The infinitive, or the accusative and infinitive, may be the subject to *est* and some other verbs :

Manere est optimum, It is best to stay.

Me manere est optimum, It is best that I should stay.

Manere solum est optimum, It is best to stay alone.

The words in *italics* form the subject to *est*. See **91–100**.

25. *The Infinitive with the Nominative*

The infinitive, or the nominative and infinitive, may be used with *possum, debeo, volo, nolo, malo, cupio, statuo* (= 'I resolve'), *coepe, desino*, and some other verbs :

Cupit manere solus, He desires to remain alone.

See **101–105**.

The nominative and infinitive may also be used with passive verbs of saying and thinking :

Dicitur manere solus, It is said that he remains alone.

See **110**.

26. *The Accusative with the Infinitive—Tense of the Infinitive*

The accusative and infinitive are used with active verbs of saying and thinking ; to some extent also with passive verbs of the same class. See **106–14**.

A common mistake is to put the wrong tense of the infinitive. Observe the tense in the following :

They say he was king (i.e. *They say* Rex erat or fuit, *He was king*), Dicunt eum regem fuisse.

They said he was king (i.e. *They said* Rex est, *He is king*), Dixerunt eum regem esse.

They said he was king (i.e. *They said* Rex erat or fuit, *He was king*), Dixerunt eum regem fuisse.

To avoid mistakes go back to the direct form, i.e. ask yourself what they did say : if the direct form has the present indicative, the indirect form will have the present infinitive ; if the direct form has the imperfect or perfect indicative, the indirect form will have the perfect infinitive. See 113.

27. ORATIO OBLIQUA

The principal rules for Oratio Obliqua are :

The indicative mood is not used.

Statements are put in the accusative and infinitive.

Questions and commands have the verb in the subjunctive.

Subordinate clauses have the verb in the subjunctive.

With regard to the tenses, keep as close as possible to the Oratio Recta and observe the rule of the sequence of tenses. See 131-52.

28. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN ORATIO RECTA AND OBLIQUA

See **115–19** on conditional sentences; **131–52** on oratio obliqua, and especially **151**.

- A. 1. Si loquatur, audiam, *If he were to speak, I would listen.*

Dixi me eum, si loqueretur, auditurum esse.

2. Si locutus esset, audissem, *If he had spoken, I should have listened (it is implied that he did not speak).*

Dixi me eum, si locutus esset, auditurum fuisse.

3. Si loqueretur audirem, *If he were speaking, I should listen (it is implied that he is not speaking).*

Dixi me eum, si loqueretur, auditurum fuisse.

- B. 1. Si id dices, mentieris, *If you (shall) say it, you will lie.*

Dixi illum, si id diceret, mentiturum esse.

2. Si id dixero, me caedet, *If I say it (shall have said it), he will flog me.*

Dixi eum me, si id dixissem, caesurum esse.

3. Si id dixisti, mentitus es, *If you said it, you lied.*
Dixi eum, si id dixisset, mentitum esse.

4. Si quid dixeram, irascebatur, *If I (had) said anything, he used to get angry.*

Dixi eum, si quid dixissem, iratum esse or irasci solitum esse.

5. Si quid dicit, mentitur, *If he says anything, he lies.*

Dixi eum, si quid diceret, mentiri.

6. Si timebat, mentiebatur, *If he was frightened, he used to lie.*

Dixi eum, si timeret, mentitum esse *or* mentiri solitum esse.

29. THE POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE

Scire velim, *I should like to know.*

Dixerit quispiam, *Some one may say.*

See 120-23.

30. COMMANDS, PROHIBITIONS, AND EXHORTATIONS

In the second person the following are the common forms :

Commands—

Singular. Veni. Fac venias. Cura ut venias.

Plural. Venite.

Prohibitions—

Singular. Noli putare. Cave (ne) putes.

Plural. Nolite putare.

In the first and third person the subjunctive is used :

Faciamus, *Let us do it.* Ne quis dicat, *Let no one say.*

See 124-28.

II

THE CONNECTING RELATIVE

31. The connection between one sentence and another is often more fully expressed in Latin than in English.

The relative pronoun and its adverb *quo* are very largely used after full stops, colons and semicolons to bind one sentence to another:

Quae cum audisset Romam profectus est. Quam ad urbem cum pervenisset ad fratris domum properavit. Quem cum in Galliam iam profectum esse cognovisset Massiliam navigare statuit. Itaque ad portum currit, *or* ad portum igitur currit.

‘When he heard this (*or*, on hearing this), he started for Rome. And when he reached the city he hastened to his brother’s house. Finding that he had already set off for Gaul he determined to sail to Marseilles. So he hurries off to the harbour.’

32. We cannot imitate this use of the relative in English. We cannot say ‘which when he had heard’ or ‘to which city when he had come’; we change the relative into a demonstrative, and say ‘when he had heard this,’ ‘when he had reached this city or

the city.' Sometimes we put in an 'and' or 'but' or 'now' to express the connection with the preceding sentence. This use of the relative is especially common with *cum*, 'when.' Observe the order of the words: the relative comes first; only a preposition can precede it:

Ex quo intellexi, *From this I gathered.*

Quibus de rebus certiores facti putavimus, *Now when we were informed of this we thought.*

[Compare the two examples just given: the relative tends to come first; it precedes the preposition when it has a substantive in agreement with it.]

Quo facto, *This done.*

Quod si fecero, *In that case; more literally, If I do so.*

Qua re or Quare, *Wherefore, Accordingly, For this reason.*

Quorum ad fines ut venit, *When he reached their territory.*

Quorum uno interfecto, *And when one of them was slain.*

Quo cum venissem, *On my arrival, or Arrived there, When I got there (whither when I had come).*

SE AND EUM

33. *Se* and *suus* refer to the subject of the sentence :

Se interfecit, he killed himself (A killed A).

Eum interfecit, he killed him (A killed B).

Eum refers to some person already mentioned other than the subject of the sentence.

In simple sentences there is no difficulty: but in sentences which have a subordinate clause, it is not always easy to decide whether *se* or *eum* is to be used; for in some subordinate clauses *se* refers to the subject of the subordinate clause; in others it refers to the subject of the principal verb. The general rule is this: ***se* in a subordinate clause refers to the subject of the principal verb, when the subordinate clause expresses the thought or will of that subject: hence in such sentences as have the verb in the infinitive, in indirect questions and commands, and in sentences expressing a purpose :**

(a) *Dixit se ei ignoscere, He said that he forgave him.*

(b) *Oravit eum ut sibi parceret, He begged him to be lenient to him.*

(c) *Imperavit eis ut se sequerentur, He ordered them to follow him.*

(d) *Quaesiverunt num se proficisci vellet, They asked whether he wanted them to start.*

In all these sentences *se* refers to the subject of the principal verb, not to the subject of its own clause; in all of them the subordinate clause expresses the

thought or the will of the subject of the principal verb. The Latin is clearer than the English : in (b), (c) and (d) the words 'him' and 'them' translating *se* and *sibi* are ambiguous.

34. But in the following *is* is used in the subordinate clause to refer to the subject of the principal verb, because the subordinate clause does not express the thought or the will of that subject :

(e) *Tam gratus erat militibus ut laeti eum sequerentur* (compare (c)), *So popular was he with the soldiers that they gladly followed him.*

(f) *Ambiorix in Aduatucos, qui erant eius regni finitimi, proficisci voluit, Ambiorix wanted to march into the territory of the Aduatuci, who lived on the borders of his kingdom.*

In (f) the relative clause does not express the thought of Ambiorix, but it is a note of the historian's. Ambiorix said to himself 'I will march into the country of the Aduatuci.' The Aduatuci, observes the historian, lived close to Ambiorix. See **155**.

35. The following sentences ¹ will make the matter clearer :

Alexander moriens anulum suum dederat Perdiccae, Alexander when dying had given his ring to Perdiccas.

Perdiccas acceperat eius anulum, Perdiccas had received his ring.

¹ I borrow these from Gildersleeve and Lodge.

Quare Alexander declaraverat se regnum ei commendasse, *Thereby [qua re, 'by this act,' namely the gift of the ring] Alexander had declared that he had committed the kingdom to him.*

Ex quo Perdiccas coniecerat eum regnum sibi commendasse, *From this Perdiccas had gathered that he had committed the kingdom to him.*

Ex quo omnes coniecerant eum regnum ei commendasse, *From this all had gathered that he had committed the kingdom to him.*

Perdiccas postulavit ut se regem haberent cum Alexander anulum sibi dedisset, *Perdiccas demanded that they should have him for king, as Alexander had given the ring to him.*

Amici postulaverunt ut omnes eum regem haberent cum Alexander anulum ei dedisset, *His friends demanded that all should have him for king, as Alexander had given the ring to him.*

Ita se gesserat Perdiccas ut ei regnum ab Alexandro commendaretur, *Perdiccas had so behaved himself that the kingdom was intrusted to him by Alexander.*

EXERCISE 1

The connecting relative is to be used in the first eight sentences.

1. I am besieging a strongly fortified town: when I have taken it, I shall dismiss the army to winter-quarters.
2. I promise to poison him this very day: this done, you will be able to do all you wish.
3. Now when he was informed of this he thought it best to delay no longer.
4. So we set off for the villa of Bibulus. And when we reached his door, we were informed that he was so seriously ill that all the doctors were in despair.
5. He wrote that he would come to my aid. Touched by his zeal, I replied that I would never forget his kindness.
6. You see the villa here, built by my father. Being in weak health he preferred to live in the country. Here I was born. That is why I love this place.
7. And when they asked for peace he replied that he had not made war on them but they on him.

2. all you wish, i.e. all the things *which* you wish. The relative is often omitted in English, but must be expressed in Latin.

3. best to delay: use the gerund. See 89.

5. Touched, *motus* or *commotus*.

6. The villa here, *haec villa*.

Being in weak health: look out 'health'; *cum* with the subj. will often translate the English participle: see 70.

That is why, 'For this reason.'

7. I make war on you, *bellum infero tibi*.

8. I see that all depends on you. Wherefore, that we may attain what we hope for, take care that you keep well.
9. She was so angry that she would not speak to him.
10. A king wants to know what his subjects think.
11. Metellus begged them to give Jugurtha up to him. He promised to give them such a large sum of money that they gave the prisoner up to him at once.
12. Quintus came to me at Aquinum on the following morning and told me that his wife would not speak to him.
13. Ennius expresses the opinion that the gods exist, but he holds that they do not care what the human race does.
14. When she saw him starting, she ordered them to follow him.
15. She is afraid that you will desert her. She begs you to write to her.
16. He was so fond of me, that I was generally supposed to be his son.

8. all depends on him, *in eo sunt omnia*.
attain, *consequor*.

9. so, *adeo*.

I speak to her, *cum ea loquor*.

10. subjects, *cives*.

11. give up: use *trado*.

12. at Aquinum. See 2.

13. to express an opinion, *censere*.
exist, *sum*.

I hold, *opinor* (1).

the human race, *humanum genus*.

16. I am so fond of him, *sic diligo eum*.

generally, *vulgo* (abl. of *vulgus*, the people).

I am supposed to be, *habeor esse*.

III

36. RELATIVE WORDS

With the relative pronoun *Qui, quae, quod* are connected the following adverbs:

ubi, 'where,' 'when'

cum, or *quom*, 'when'

cur, 'for which reason,' 'why'

quo, 'to which place,' 'whither'

unde, 'whence,' 'from which'

and the adjectives $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{qualis}, \text{ ' (such) as ' } \\ \textit{quantus}, \text{ ' (as great) as. ' } \end{array} \right.$

37. INTERROGATIVE WORDS

Quis? Quid? ask the questions 'Who?' 'What?'
Qui, quae, quod are the adjectival forms, that is to say, are the forms used in agreement with a substantive:

Quis erat? Quid dixit? Quid periculi est? Qui miles erat? Quae puella? Quod bellum gessisti?

Uter asks the question 'Which (of two)?'

Note.—*Uter-que* means 'each (of two),' 'either,' 'both.' *Quis-que* means 'each of some larger number.'

The following adverbs and adverbial expressions are connected with *Quis*?

Quando? 'when?'

Ubi? or *Quo in loco*? 'where?'

Cur? 'for what reason?' 'why?'

Quo? 'whither?' 'where (to)?'

Qua? 'by what road?'

Unde? 'where from?' 'whence?'

and the adjectives $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{Qualis?} \text{ 'what sort of?'} \\ \textit{Quantus?} \text{ 'how great?'} \end{array} \right.$

All these interrogative words are used in indirect as well as in direct questions:

Quid ageres, ubi terrarum esses, ne suspicabar quidem, I hadn't even a suspicion what you were doing, or where on earth you were.

Beware of using *cum* to ask the question 'when?' instead of *quando*, or *qua* for 'where?' instead of *ubi*.

38. Beware of confusing the relative with the indirect interrogative:

Relative. *I will do what you tell me, Id quod (or Ea quae) iusseris faciam (iusseris is fut. perf.).*

Interrogative. *I don't know what you told us to do, Quid (or Quae) nos facere iusseris nescio (iusseris is perf. subj.).*

In a relative sentence you can change 'who' into 'he who,' 'those who' etc., 'what' into 'that which.' You cannot do this in an interrogative sentence without changing or destroying the sense:

I know who did it, Quis fecerit scio.

I know the man who did it, Eum qui fecit nōvi.

39. The indirect question may depend on a great variety of expressions; here are a few examples:

Scribe quid factururus sis utrum, *Write and tell me what you are going to do.*

Quam paucis ille copiis prae-esset non eram ignarus, *I was not ignorant how small was the force under his command* (lit. *how few troops he was commanding*).

Miror qua de causa gaudeas, *I wonder why you are joyful.*

Monendus est quo in loco flumen transiri possit, *He must be told (warned) where the river can be crossed.*

Quid ego faciam noli laborare, *As to what I am doing don't trouble yourself.*

Cur redieris intellego, *I see why you have come back.*

40. INDEFINITE. 'IF A MAN,' 'IF EVER,' ETC.

'Any,' 'any one,' 'a man,' and the like, are translated by *quis, qua, quid* (adjectival forms *qui, quae* or *qua, quod*) after *ne, num, si, nisi*, or a relative pronoun or adverb:

Si quis id dicit, mentitur, *If a man says that, he lies.*

Si quis me fefellit, ei non amplius credo, *If a man has deceived me, I trust him no more.*

Quando is used in the same way for an unemphatic 'ever,' 'at any time': *si quo* is used for 'if . . . in any direction,' 'if . . . any where'¹ [i.e. *to any place*].

Si quando Romam alio-ve quo mitterent legatos, *If ever they sent envoys to Rome or any other place.*

Num quando redibit? *Will he ever return?*

¹ If there is any sense of motion towards a place, use *quo* ('whither'), *eo* ('thither'): in modern English we have dropped 'whither' and 'thither' and we use only 'where' and 'there,' whether we mean 'to a place' or 'in a place.'

41. 'ANY' AND 'EVER' IN A NEGATIVE SENTENCE:
'AND NO ONE' = NEC QUISQUAM

Quisquam is used for 'any one' (substantival) and *ullus* for 'any' (adjectival) in negative sentences: *unquam* ('at any time,' 'ever'), *usquam* ('at or to any place') are used in the same way. The negative sense is often expressed by putting the sentence in an interrogative form:

Quis dicit (= Nemo dicit) quemquam nostrum fugisse?

Note the difference between the English and the Latin idiom in:

and (or, but) no one came back, nec quisquam rediit,
and there is no hope, neque ulla spes est,
and I have never seen, neque unquam vidi.

Do not write *et nemo*, *et nullus*, or *et nunquam*.

42. 'ANY ONE YOU LIKE'

When 'any' means 'any you please' the Latin is *quivis*¹ (*qui* + *vis*, 'who you please,' the second person of *volo*) or *quilibet* (*qui* + *libet*, 'it pleases you'). Compare *Quivis potest id intellegere*, Any one can understand it, with *Negat quemquam id intellegere posse*, He denies that any one can understand it, i.e. He says that no one can understand it:

Quidvis pati potius quam recedere, *To endure any hardship (anything you please) rather than retire.*

¹ declined *quivis quaevis quidvis* (substantive) or *quodvis* (adjective)
quilibet quaelibet quidlibet or *quodlibet*.

43. 'SOME ONE,' 'SOME' ¹ (ALIQUIS, QUIDAM, QUONDAM)

Aliquis means 'some one,' and is used chiefly in affirmative sentences :

vidi aliquem, *I saw somebody.*

Quispiam is less common :

Dixerit quispiam, *Some one may say.*

Quidam, 'a certain person,' 'one,' 'a' :

vidi quemdam, *I saw a certain person.*

Compare *aliquis* with *quidam* : *aliquis* means some one 'wholly indefinite to the speaker as well as to the hearer': as in 'some one told me, but I can't remember who it was': *quidam* means a certain person 'definite or indefinite to the speaker but not definitely designated to the hearer': ² as in 'a certain person told me; perhaps I could give you his name.'

44. Hence the adverb *quondam*, 'on a certain occasion,' 'one day,' 'once,' 'once upon a time' :

id quod ego quondam dixi, *as I said one day.*

Note the common use of *quidam* and *quondam* in beginning a story : for example, *Colloquebar quondam cum quodam homine*, I was talking to a man one day. Who the man was, and when the thing happened, are points which make no difference to the story, and so they are left indefinite :

I hope to see you some day (*aliquando*).

I was with him one day (*quondam or quodam die*).

¹ It is often better to translate 'some' by *sunt qui* or *nonnulli sunt qui*, e.g.

However, some people trust him, Sunt tamen qui ei credant.
See 157.

² From Gildersleeve and Lodge.

45. 'WHOEVER,' 'WHEREVER,' ETC.

Quisquis, *quidquid* (generally substantival), and *quicumque*, *quaecumque*, *quodcumque* (generally adjectival), correspond to the English relatives 'whoever,' 'whatever,' etc.

Quocumque, Whithersoever, In whatever direction.

I shall go wherever you go, *Quocumque tu ibis, eo*
(= *thither*) *ego ibo*.

Beware of using *quicumque* for *quivis*.

Compare

Any risk whatever must be run, *Quodvis periculum*
est adeundum

with

Quidquid periculi est (*Quodcumque periculum est*),
est adeundum, *Whatever risk there is we must*
run it.

With *quisquis* or *quicumque* you must have a verb: *quivis* contains its verb in itself.

46. QUISQUE

Quisque must be used with care. It corresponds to the English word 'each' only in some of its meanings. It must never begin a sentence, but must come immediately after one of the following:

1. *se* or *suus*,
2. a superlative,
3. an ordinal number,

4. a relative or interrogative word, such as those shown in **36** and **37**.

For instance :

1. se quisque amat, sua cuique res est carissima,
2. optimus quisque maxime gloria ducitur, *the better a man is the more ambitious he is (the more he is led on by glory),*
3. tertio quoque anno, *every third year,*
4. causam quaerit cur quidque fiat, *he tries to find out the reason (why each thing happens) of every occurrence.*

47. IPSE

Ipse is the emphasising pronoun :

Ipse feci, I did it myself, with my own hands,
It was I who did it, I did it for myself (i.e. I didn't send some one else to do it for me).

Si scriberem ipse, longior epistula fuisset, sed dictavi, *If I were writing with my own hand, the letter would have been longer, but I have dictated it.*

It may be used of any of the three persons :

Ipse feci, *I did it myself.*

Ipse fecisti, *You did it yourself.*

Ipsi fecimus, *We did it ourselves* ; and so on.

It may be used as an adjective :

hac ipsa nocte, *this very night.*

It is often used to contrast the leader with his followers, the general with his soldiers, etc.

Legiones in hiberna dimisit: ipse Romam profectus est.

48. IDEM

Idem (*is + dem*) is a more emphatic *is*. It is used to connect two statements with one person or thing. Sometimes we can translate it by 'the same,' sometimes by 'also,' 'at the same time':

Qui fortis est, idem est fidens (*The man who is brave, that man is confident*), *The man who is brave is also confident, or, is at the same time . . .*

Frustra id iussisset, nisi eadem docuisset quomodo esset faciendum, *In vain would she have given the order, if she had not at the same time (or, also) shown how it was to be carried out.*

Hence *eo-dem*, to the same place.

49. 'ONE ANOTHER'

There is no reciprocal pronoun in Latin: 'one another' is translated *inter nos*, *inter vos*, *inter se*:

We embrace one another, *Inter nos complectimur.*

You were talking to one another, *Inter vos loquebamini.*

They love one another, *Inter se amant* (*φιλοῦσιν ἀλλήλους*).

50. POSITION OF RELATIVE CLAUSE

Note the position of the relative clause in the following examples, and arrange any similar sentences in the same way:

Unde profectus erat, eodem rediit, *He returned to the point from which he started* (Latin: *from whence he had started, to that same point he returned*).

Quem ipse capitis damnavit, eundem liberabit, *He will set free the very man whom he has himself condemned.*

You will see that there is a tendency in Latin to put the relative clause first. In English the antecedent must come before the relative: we could not begin the last example 'whom he has himself condemned,' but we must at least put the antecedent 'the man' (= *eum*) before the relative. Even then the sentence will be a little awkward: 'the man whom he has himself condemned he will set free.' It is generally better to change the position of the two clauses, as in the examples above.

There is one relative pronoun in English which may be used like the Latin relative without any antecedent, viz. 'what': with this word the English and Latin order may correspond:

What they had foretold came true, Quae praedixerant evenerunt.

51. The usual English equivalent of the Latin (*is*) *qui*, *eum qui*, *eos qui* etc. is 'the man who,' 'the men who.' In translating into Latin do not write *homo qui* or *vir qui*. The antecedent *is* may generally be omitted if it would be in the same case as the relative.

EXERCISE 2

Many of the words required will be found in Sections 36-51, but not in the Dictionary. You should learn the examples nearly by heart before you begin to do the exercise.

1. There were in a certain city a king and a queen.
2. Why do they hate one another? Anybody can see why they hate one another.
3. Each man ought to look after his own interests.
4. If you want me to go anywhere to-morrow, let me know to-day when I am to start.
5. Whatever is the issue of the war, both states will lose many citizens. Can it be doubtful to any one that the risk is great?
6. Let us return to the point from which we made a digression: you say that whatever is honourable is also useful.
7. The matter is very difficult to explain, and to me at the present time any reason for idleness seems good enough.

3. I look after my own interest, *mihī consulo* (3) (I consult for myself).

4. *volo* with acc. and inf.

let me know, *fac sciam* (bring it about that I may know).

I am to start: use the gerund; see 83.

5. issue, *eventus* (4), the outcome or result, from *e-venio*.

Whatever is the issue = Whatever shall be the issue. The future must be used in Latin: see 14.

6. I make a digression, *digredior* (3). The relative clause will come first; see 50.

7. difficult to explain, *difficilis ad explicandum*.

to be idle, *cessāre*: a reason for being idle, *causa cessandi*.

good enough, *satis iustus*.

8. If a man is hateful to them, they murder him, and there is no one in the whole state who dares bring them to trial.
9. As I wanted to make use of certain books from the library of Lucullus I went to his villa to get them out for myself. When I got there I saw Marcus Cato sitting in the library. What brings you here? said he; if I had known you were at your villa I would have come to see you myself.
10. Whatever the people order we must do.
11. Is it not better to endure anything whatever than to yield to the Germans?
12. You ask when he will return? Do you really think he will ever return? Yes, it is the custom to come back from India every fifth year.

8. who dares : subj., see 157.

I bring (him) to trial, *reum (eum) facio* (I make him the defendant).

9. As, *cum* with subj.

library, *bibliothēca*.

to get them out : say 'that I might take them (*prōmo* (3)) thence' (*inde*).

when I got there : see 32.

What brings you here? say 'Why have you come hither?' *Quid tu huc [venisti]?*

I come to see you, *ad te venio*.

The English word 'villa' has acquired a very different meaning from that which the word bore in Latin and still bears in Italian. To a Roman the word meant a country-house, often of great size, together with all the land and buildings belonging to it. A palace like Hatfield House together with its park might be covered by the expression *villa suburbana*, 'a place near town.'

10. See 14.

11. it is better, *satius est*.

12. yes, *etiam*.

custom : say 'they are accustomed.'

from India, *ab Indis*.

13. When we have found out how large is the force under his command, we shall be able to decide where to take refuge, and where to look for help.
14. As to the doings of the city I am looking for a letter from you: I should like to know what Arrius is saying and how he takes being left in the lurch, and who are going to be consuls, and whether there is any news. I wish you would write and tell me what day you think you will leave Rome, so that I may inform you where I shall be.
15. He told me to do it himself.

13. when we have found out: as to the tense, see 14.

Say 'of how great forces he is in command.'

where to take refuge etc.: say 'whither we must fly, whence we must look for help.' As to the gerund etc., see 89.

14. doings of the city, *res urbanae* (*urbanus* is the adjective of *urbs*).

how does he take being deceived? *quo animo* (= with what feelings) *se deceptum fert*? Turn in the same way 'how he takes being left in the lurch' (to leave in the lurch, *destituere*).

I wish you would write and tell me, *velim ad me scribas*; see 122.

IV

THE TENSES

52. A verb represents (i.e. puts before the mind) an action or a state: *currere*, the act of running; *valere*, the state of good health.

For our present purpose the distinction between an action and a state is of no importance. We shall, therefore, generally speak of verbs as representing actions, and leave the reader to understand thereby actions or states.

By the use of different tenses a speaker represents an action, as (1) present at the time at which he speaks; or (2) past at the time at which he speaks; or (3) future, i.e. about to happen at a time subsequent to the time at which he speaks. The tenses, then, represent an action as taking place at a time present, past, or future, *relatively to the time of speaking*: (1) *scribo*, I write (now); (2) *scripsi*, I wrote (at a time which to me now is past); (3) *scribam*, I shall write (at some time which to me now is future).

Further, the tenses may show the stage of the action, i.e. the verb may represent the action either as in progress or as completed. The following tenses represent the action as in progress: they are called the tenses of continuance:

In progress in the present, *scribo*, I am writing.

„ „ past, *scribebam*, I was writing.

„ „ future, *scribam*, I shall be writing.

The following represent the action as completed ; they are called the tenses of completion :

Completed in the present, *scripsi*, I have written.

„ „ past, *scripseram*, I had written.

„ „ future, *scripsero*, I shall have written.

You will observe that the tenses of continuance begin with *scrib-*, and the tenses of completion begin with *scrips-*.

The speaker may, however, speak of the action without reference to the stage reached ; he may simply state that the action takes, took, or will take place :

Indefinite present, *scribo*, I write.

„ past, *scripsi*, I wrote.

„ future, *scribam*, I shall write.

These are called the indefinite or aorist¹ tenses, because they do not define the stage of the action.

The following table will make the matter clearer :

| | The stage of the action not defined | The action represented as in progress | The action represented as completed |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|--|--|
| Time present to the speaker | <i>scribo</i> , I write | <i>scribo</i> , I am writing | <i>scripsi</i> , I have written |
| Time past to the speaker | <i>scripsi</i> , I wrote | <i>scribebam</i> , I was writing | <i>scripseram</i> , I had written |
| Time future to the speaker | <i>scribam</i> , I shall write | <i>scribam</i> , I shall be writing | <i>scripsero</i> , I shall have written |

¹ Aorist from the Greek ἀόριστος 'indefinite.'

53. The Latin idiom differs greatly from the English in the use of the tenses in subordinate clauses. The two principal points of difference are these.

1. If the subordinate clause represents an action as prior to (that is, completed before) the commencement of the action represented by the verb of the principal clause, then, in Latin, one of the tenses of completion is used in the subordinate clause. As we have seen above, the perfect is used of an act completed in the present; the pluperfect of one completed in the past; the future perfect of one completed in the future:

Present. Quae praedicta sunt, ea non semper eveniunt,
What is predicted, does not always come true.

Past. Qui id fecerant, expulsi sunt, *Those who did it were banished.*

Future. Qui prior strinxerit ferrum, eius victoria erit, *He who first draws the sword will be the victor.*

The English idiom sometimes shows by the tense used that the one act is completed before the other begins, but more often leaves this to be understood from the context. We may say if we like, 'Those who had done it were banished,' but in Latin the pluperfect must necessarily be used. In case of difficulty try whether you can introduce the tense of completion in the English without altering the sense: if you can say 'what has been predicted,' for 'what is predicted,' the perfect will be required in Latin. In the same way in the third example, we do not alter the sense if we introduce the unidiomatic 'he who shall first have drawn the sword.'

2. If the subordinate clause refers to the future a future tense is used in Latin: (a) the future simple to represent an action or state contemporaneous with the action of the principal verb, (b) the future perfect when the one action precedes the other. In English, on the other hand, it is not idiomatic to use a future tense in a subordinate clause.

- (a) Erunt omnia facilia, si valebis, *Everything will be easy, if you are well.*
- (b) Cum Romam venero, litteras ad te cotidie scribam, *When I get to Rome, I will write you a letter every day.*

54. The rules given in the preceding section apply to subordinate sentences in general. It is specially important to note their application to (1) iterative sentences, (2) conditional sentences, (3) sentences introduced by *cum*, 'when':

(1) Iterative sentences are sentences which deal with the repetition of two acts in connection with one another an indefinite number of times; for instance

As often as A occurs, B occurs.

Such sentences are introduced by 'if (ever),' *si*; 'when (ever),' *cum*; 'as often as,' *quotiens*; 'who (ever),' *quicumque*; 'wherever' (= whithersoever), *quocumque*; and similar expressions.

If the two actions are contemporaneous, the tenses of continuance are used in both clauses:

Present. Cum cantat, audīmus, *Whenever he sings, we listen.*

Past. Cum cantabat, audiebamus, *Whenever he sang, we used to listen.*

Future. Cum cantabit, audiemus, *Whenever he sings, we shall (always) listen.*

But if the one action precedes the other, the tenses of completion are used in the subordinate clauses:

Present. Cum cantavit, plaudimus, *Whenever he sings, we clap.*

Past. Cum cantaverat, plaudebamus, *Whenever he sang, we clapped.*

Future. Cum cantaverit, plaudemus, *Whenever he sings, we shall clap.*

55. (2) The rules given in Section **53** will guide you as to the use of the tenses in those conditional sentences which take the indicative.

Unless you start at once there is no hope of escape,
Nisi confestim profectus eris, nulla spes est effugiendi.

If we follow nature as our guide, we shall never go wrong,
Naturam si sequemur ducem, numquam aberrabimus.

The old man used to get angry if I said anything at all rough,
Stomachabatur senex si quid asperius¹ dixeram.

You will notice that the first two examples come under the rule given in **53**, 2, and the third is an iterative sentence like those shown in **54**. These are

¹ This is the comparative of *asper*. A comparative is often used in Latin where in English we might say 'rather rough,' 'a bit rough.' The meaning is 'rougher than one might expect.' Sometimes the sense is 'rougher than it ought to be,' 'too rough.'

the only two classes of conditional sentences taking the indicative which present any difficulty: in others you will have no difficulty as to the tense, as the English and Latin will correspond; for instance

If I killed him, I did right; but I did not kill him,
Si occīdi, recte feci; sed non occidi.

If you are in health, it is well, Si vales, bene est.

As to conditional sentences which require the subjunctive, see **115, 116**.

56. (3) The rules given in Section **53** will guide you as to the use of the tenses in those sentences in which *cum* takes the indicative. *Cum* takes the indicative (a) in sentences referring to the future, and (b), as we have already seen, in iterative sentences:

(a) Pecuniam tibi, cum potero, solvam, *I will pay you the money when I can.*

Ego tibi solvam cum Titus mihi solverit, *I will pay you when Titus pays me.*

(b) Gyges cum anulum converterat a nullo videbatur, *Whenever Gyges turned his ring round he was seen by no one.*¹

Ager cum multos annos quievit uberiores efferre fruges solet, *When a field has rested many years it generally bears a more abundant crop.*

Note the difference between the sentence above and

¹ The story of Gyges and the magic ring is given in Cicero *de Officiis*, iii. 38. The wearer of the ring became invisible when he turned it round so that the jewel came to the inner side of the hand. Cicero's words are 'Cum pālam eius ānūli ad palmam converterat, a nullo videbatur, ipse autem omnia videbat.' *pala* is the bezel of the ring, i.e. the part in which the jewel is fixed.

Gyges cum convertisset anulum a nullo videbatur,

Having turned his ring Gyges was seen by no one.

This refers to one particular occasion, whereas *cum converterat* refers to any number of occasions.

57. If you have understood what has been said above you will see that it may be summed up in the following: Latin expresses more exactly than English the relation of the action, represented by the verb of a subordinate sentence, to the action represented by the verb of the principal sentence. Latin states explicitly, what we only state by implication, that the action is future. Latin distinguishes the completed action from the action in progress in many sentences in which we should not do so.

When you have to translate, for example, 'when he comes' into Latin, you must ask yourself (1) Is the coming future? (2) Does the coming precede the other action? or does it go on at the same time?

What tense would be used in translating 'comes' in each of the following sentences?

- (1) When he comes, I always come with him.
- (2) When he comes, I shall be set free.
- (3) When he comes, we always have a good talk.
- (4) When he comes, I shall come with him.

58. We have seen that the present represents an action as in progress at the time of speaking. Hence it is also used of an action commenced long ago and still continuing, especially with *iam* or *iam diu*:

Iam diu regnat, she has long been queen.

Annum iam sexagesimum tertium regnat, It is the sixty-third year of her reign, She has been reigning more than sixty-two years.

The imperfect is used in the same way in reference to the past :

Iam diu regnabat, *She had long been queen.*

The imperfect is used because the reign was still continuing at the time referred to, just as the present is used if the reign is still continuing at the time of speaking.

In sentences of this type English is peculiar. Compare the French *Elle est reine depuis longtemps*, and the Greek *πάλαι βασιλεύει*, and the German *Sie ist schon lange Königin*. Occasionally we find the same use of the present in English : ‘ How does your honour for this many a day ? ’ (Shakespeare).

EXERCISE 3

The subjunctive will not be used in this exercise, except in the indirect question in sentence 8. The only difficulty lies in the use of the tenses. Some of the words are not in the dictionary : see 52-58.

1. Whatever he heard and saw would (i.e. used to) remain fixed in his memory.
2. I am indeed desirous and have long been desirous to visit Athens.
3. As often as he falls he rises.
4. When you have destroyed Carthage you will be made dictator, if you escape the impious hands of your brother.
5. Those who paid the money were set free at once.
6. If (ever) you say anything at all rough, he gets angry.
7. If she gives any order we carry it out.
8. Be silent: I will tell you what is to be done—
Speak: I will do what you bid me.
9. Whenever he slept we kept silence.
10. In whichever direction he set off, he kept returning to the same spot.
11. You have long had the wish rather than the pluck to set yourselves free from Philip.

1. to remain fixed in the memory, *haerere* ('to stick') *in memoria*.

2. indeed, *equidem*.

7. carry out, *efficio* (3).

10 In whichever direction, *Quocumque* . . .

set off: use *ire*.

return: use *revertor* (3).

to the same spot, *eodem*.

11. Say 'You have long wished rather (*magis*) than dared.' Philip, *Philippus*.

12. When you read this I shall perhaps have had my interview with Caesar.
13. It was now the twentieth day of our siege of Ephesus, and there seemed to be no hope of a surrender.
14. We will go wherever you bid us go, and we will never return unless you wish it.
15. If you fail to come I shan't be angry with you. Come when you can.
16. The letters I sent you were not delivered.
17. The man who crushes Antonius will finish the war.

12. I have an interview with him, *convenio* (4) *eum*.

13. siege : use the verb 'besiege.'

and there did not seem to be any : see 41.

Proper names are not given in the dictionary if the Latin form is the same as the English, and if the declension is obvious : for instance Ephesus, Antonius are obviously like *dominus*.

14. Begin with the relative clause : see 50.

15. 'fail' may be translated by *non* : *non venit*, he failed to come.

16. to send a letter to him, *litteras ad eum dare* ; to deliver the letter to him, *litteras ei reddere*.

17. crush, *opprimo* (3), from *ob* and *premo*.

V

TEMPORAL SENTENCES

Postquam, ubi, etc., with Perfect

59. We saw in **53** that in a sentence dealing with two past actions, one of which is thought of as finished before the commencement of the other, Latin uses the pluperfect of the prior action :

Legati quos miserat redierunt, *The envoys he sent came back.*

In English it is often more idiomatic to use the indefinite perfect (aorist) 'he sent' than the pluperfect 'he had sent.'

60. This is the general rule in Latin. There is, however, one important exception: with a large number of temporal conjunctions the perfect (aorist) is used in speaking of a particular¹ past action. Among these conjunctions are

ubi, *when.*

ut, *as, when.*

postquam, *after.*

simul ac (atque), ubi primum, *as soon as, the moment that.*

priusquam (antequam), *before.*

¹ Contrast the iterative sentences which refer not to a particular occasion but to an indefinite number of occasions: for instance 'As soon as he entered we ceased to talk' refers to a particular occasion; 'As soon as he entered we always ceased to talk' is an iterative sentence. The iterative sentences follow the general rule given in **53**.

Compare the Greek use of the aorist ἐπειδὴ ἀπῆλθεν, 'after he went away.' In English sentences of this type we generally use the indef. perf., less often the pluperf.:

Postquam a nobis discessit a latrone interfectus est, *After he left us (or, had left us), he was murdered by a highwayman.*

Ut equitatum suum pulsum vidit, acie excessit, *When he saw his cavalry driven back he left the field.*¹

The adverbs *post* or *postea* (= 'after the time'), *prius* or *ante* (= 'before the time') may be separated from the relative adverb *quam* (= 'at which time'):

Neque prius fugere destiterunt quam ad flumen Rhenum pervenerunt, *And they did not stop running before [the time (prius) at which time (quam)] they reached the Rhine.*

61. *Priusquam, etc., with Subjunctive*

In temporal sentences the mood is regularly the indicative, except in oratio obliqua. (See, however, as to *cum*.)

If a purpose is implied in the temporal clause the mood is the subjunctive; this is not uncommon with *antequam* and *priusquam*:

Caesar priusquam se hostes ex terrore recipere in fines Suessionum exercitum duxit, *Before the enemy could recover from their panic Caesar led his army into the territory of the Suessiones.*

Here by using the subjunctive the writer tells us that it was Caesar's purpose to act before the enemy had recovered. Contrast *priusquam redi discessit*, which states simply that his departure took place before my return.

¹ *acies* means an army drawn up for or engaged in battle: so we may often translate it 'the fight,' 'the battle-field.'

62. *How to translate 'While,' 'Until,' and the like*

If 'while' means 'during the time that' (ἐν ᾧ), it is translated by *dum* with the present indicative even in reference to past time :

Dum haec aguntur (or geruntur) interea nuntius advenit, While this was going on a messenger arrived, or, In the course of these proceedings etc.

In the principal sentence *interea* ('in the middle of it,' 'in the meantime') is often added. When translating into English it will generally be better not to attempt to render *interea* by any separate expression, as its sense is sufficiently expressed by the word 'while' or 'in the course of.' But in translating into Latin *interea* should as a rule be expressed with *dum*, meaning 'during the time that.'

63. If 'while' means 'so long as,' 'all the time that' (ἕως) it is translated by *dum* or (*quamdiu*) with the indicative: present, past, or future tenses are used according to the meaning. *Tam diu* (= 'for so long') is often added with the principal verb. The same tense is generally used in both clauses :

Fuit haec gens fortis dum Lycurgi leges vigeabant, This nation was brave as long as the laws of Lycurgus were in force.

Tiberius enim Gracchus tam diu laudabitur, dum memoria rerum Romanarum manebit, For Tiberius Gracchus will be praised as long as the doings of Rome are remembered (lit. as long as the memory of Roman doings shall remain).

64. 'Till' or 'until' is generally translated by *dum*.¹ The verb will be in the subjunctive (present or imperfect) if there is any sense of purpose or expectation; hence very commonly with *exspecto*:

Exspectandum est dum redeat, *We must wait till he comes back, or, for him to return.*

Dum mihi a te litterae veniant in Italia morabor,
I shall stay in Italy till I get a letter from you.

But if there is no suggestion of purpose or expectation, the verb will be in the indicative:

Mansit dum ego redii, *He stayed there till I came back.*

This states simply that his stay lasted till the time of my arrival. Contrast

Mansit dum redirem, *He waited for my return.*

This implies that his purpose in staying was to see me.

¹ *Donec* is quite uncommon in classical prose.

EXERCISE 4

Quem ut vidi, quem ubi vidi, quem cum vidissem give, as nearly as possible, the same sense.

When possible, do the sentences in more ways than one.

Introduce the connecting relative whenever you can (see 31, 32).

1. After we had carried off the gold we embarked.
2. When this news was brought, Fabius was appointed dictator.
3. The moment that the enemy caught sight of our cavalry, they made a rush and quickly threw our men into confusion.
4. Some time before he died he gave all his *property*¹ to me.
5. As soon as the shouting was heard, the soldiers deserted their posts and fled to the citadel.
6. All the time that we were talking I was looking out for the messenger.
7. As soon as I looked at you, before you began to speak, I felt that you were angry.
8. In the course of our talk your letter was delivered to me.

3. I catch sight of, *conspicio*.

I throw into confusion, *perturbo* (1).

our men, *nostri*.

Arrange the sentence thus: 'The enemy, the moment that they . . . , made a rush and . . . ' 'The enemy,' being the subject of the principal verb, must not be placed in a subordinate clause. You will often have to apply this rule. We say 'When Caesar had conquered the Gauls he returned.' What is the Latin order?

4. Some time before, *aliquanto ante* (before by a considerable bit).

5. I desert my post, *desero stationem*; *statio* (from *stare*), the place where I ought to stand.

7. I look at you, *aspicio te*.

¹ Words printed in italics need not be translated.

9. While the elephants were being taken across the river, Hannibal sent five hundred horsemen towards the Roman camp to observe the position and number of our forces.
10. Perhaps you are waiting for me to call on you. I will come when Atticus has left me. Till he came to me I did not know you had left Rome.
11. This being the state of affairs, he nevertheless refrained from action until envoys and letters reached him from Cneius Pompeius.
12. As long as you are rich you will have many friends.
13. He made up his mind to attack the city before Domitius could come to the aid of the citizens. Accordingly he did not wait for my return.
14. Before they reached Brundisium Pompeius set sail.
15. While the Romans were making these preparations, Saguntum was already being attacked.
16. As long as Pompeius was in Italy I did not cease to hope.
17. We had to start before the enemy could get information as to our plan.

9. I take the elephants across the river, *traicio* (3) *flumen elephantos*.
In the passive, *elephanti flumen traiciuntur*.

five hundred : the numerals are on p. 308.

I observe (i.e. I spy out, I reconnoitre), *speculo* (1). For the various ways to express a purpose see 8.

the position and number : say 'where and how great the forces were.'

10. when Atticus has left : use *cum*.

11. This being the state of affairs, *quae cum ita essent*.

I refrain from action, *me teneo* (I hold myself back).

17. We had to start : use the *gerund*.

VI

THE CONJUNCTION CUM

65. 1. If 'when' means 'whenever,' 'as often as,' *cum* is used, as we have seen, with the indicative :

Gyges *cum* anulum converterat a nullo videbatur,
When (= If ever) Gyges turned his ring round
he became invisible.

See **53, 54** as to the tenses.

66. 2. If the clause introduced by 'when' refers to the future, *cum* is used with the future or future perfect indicative :

Veniam *cum* potero, *I will come when I can.*

Cum Karthaginem deleveris, deligēris consul, *When*
thou hast destroyed Carthage, thou wilt be chosen
consul.

Veniet *cum* ego iussero, *He will come when I bid him.*

Compare **53**.

67. 3. *Cum* meaning 'when' (not 'whenever') has the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive when the principal verb is in a historic tense.

Care must be taken to use the right tense, as the English is often misleading: the imperfect is used to represent an action as contemporaneous with (i.e. going

on at the same time as) that of the principal verb; the pluperfect represents an action as prior to (i.e. finished before) that of the leading verb:

Cum in Africam venissem, Masinissam conveni,
When I reached Africa, I went to see Masinissa.

Cum ad me scriberet, negavit se aegrotare, *When he wrote to me, he said he was not ill.*

‘I reached’ and ‘he wrote’ are both the same tense in English; but, as we have seen, the Latin tenses express more exactly than the English the relation of one action to another. It is clear that the arrival in Africa precedes the interview with Masinissa, while the writing of the letter is contemporaneous with the statement as to the writer’s health. This difference *must* be expressed in Latin; it *may* be expressed in English: we may say ‘when I had arrived’ and ‘when he was writing.’

68. *Cum* meaning ‘since,’ ‘as,’ ‘seeing that,’ ‘considering that,’ ‘although’ has the subjunctive:

Quae cum ita sint, proficiscendum est, *Since this is the state of affairs (or, This being the case), we must start.*

Cum dubitaret, ex deo quaesivit, *As he was in doubt (or, Being in doubt), he asked the god.*

Nihil me adiuvit, cum posset, *He gave me no help although he had the power to do so, or, at a time when he had the power to do so.*

69. *Cum* with the subjunctive may often be best translated into English by the use of a participle, as in some of the examples above.

A Latin verb has no past participle active: *cum* with the pluperfect subjunctive is often used to supply its place:

Having arrived, Cum pervenisset.

Having taken the city, Cum urbem cepisset, or Urbe capta.

70. *Cum* with the imperfect subjunctive often takes the place of our present participle. We use our present participle very freely in agreement with the subject of the sentence to represent the cause of the action represented by the principal verb: for instance, 'Feeling thirsty he asked for water,' 'Thinking I was mistaken I turned back.' These participles are represented by *cum* and the subjunctive in Latin: *Cum sitiret aquam poposcit*, *Cum putarem me errare reverti*.

71. Study the moods and tenses in the following examples:

1. Cum anulum convertit (perfect), a nullo videtur,
Whenever he turns his ring he is seen by no one.
2. Cum anulum converterit (fut. perf.), a nullo videbitur, *When he has turned his ring, he will be seen by no one.*
3. Cum anulum convertisset, a nullo visus est,
When he had turned his ring (or, Having turned his ring), he was seen by no one.
4. Cum anulum converterit (perf. subj.), eum videre non potes, *As he has turned the ring you cannot see him.*

Cum anulum convertisset, tamen ab omnibus visus est, *Though he had turned the ring, still he was seen by every one.*

72. If you look at the examples in 65, 66 you will see that *cum* with the indicative is a purely temporal conjunction, that is to say it is used to tell us only how one action is related to another with regard to the *time* of its occurrence. We might therefore represent the force of *cum* with the indicative by such formulae as

As often as A occurs, so often does B occur,
or, At the time at which A shall (have) happen(ed), at that time will B happen.

Now if you look at the examples of *cum*-sentences in 67, 68 you will see that when *cum* has the subjunctive it may be translated by 'when,' 'since,' 'as,' 'although.' One naturally asks, What is the meaning of *cum* with the subjunctive which lies at the bottom of all these different translations? *Cum* with a subjunctive puts before us the *circumstances* in which the action represented by the principal verb takes place. For example, *Quae cum facta essent discessit* does not mean 'At the time at which this had happened he went away,' but 'This having happened (This being the state of affairs), he went away.' The participle is often used in English in much the same way to put the circumstances before us, and therefore often provides, as we have seen, the nearest equivalent of a *cum*-clause. *Cum* may be translated 'when,' 'since,' 'as,' 'although,' because the circumstances may be regarded as simply the occasion of the action ('when'), or as its cause ('since,' 'as'), or even, but less commonly, as the cause which was insufficient to produce it ('although'); in this last-named case *tamen* is often added to make the sense clearer: *quae cum facta essent, tamen discessit*, 'This having happened, all the same he went away,' 'Although this had happened he went away.'

Hence these are all possible translations of the one sentence
Cum rex mortuus esset fugit :

- (1) The king being dead, he ran away ;
- (2) On the death of the king, he ran away ;
- (3) When the king was dead, he ran away ;
- (4) Since (as) the king was dead, he ran away ;
- (5) Although the king was dead, he ran away.

In (1) and (2) the English puts the circumstances before us

without indicating how they are to be regarded ; (3), (4), (5) are more explicit.

The more advanced student will do well to note that in the strictly temporal sense *cum* may be used with *any* tense of the indicative (not only in iterative sentences as shown in section 65 and not only in reference to the future as shown in section 66). For example Cicero writes 'Atque his libris adnumerandi sunt sex *de re publica*, quos tum scripsimus, cum gubernacula rei publicae tenebamus, 'And to these books (just mentioned) must be added the six books *Concerning the State* which I wrote at the time when I held the helm of the state.' When *cum* is so used it is often preceded by *tum* or some other word which directs the attention specially to the *time* of the occurrence. *Cum* with the indicative is used just like a relative¹ clause with the indicative: *eo anno cum consul eram* = *eo anno quo anno consul eram*, 'in the year in which I was consul.' On the other hand when the subjunctive is used the meaning of the *cum*-clause is less definite: the temporal sense is often the most prominent but other meanings are not excluded. No instances of *cum* with the past tenses of the indicative except in the sense of 'as often as' will be found in the exercises, but it must not be supposed that it is uncommon or incorrect. Contrast the following sentence with the examples given above:

Tum fugit cum rex moriebatur, *He ran away at the time when the king lay dying.*

¹ Of course *cum* or *quom* is connected with *qui*.

HINTS FOR EXERCISE 5

The connecting relative is very common with *cum*; see 31, 32; *Quo cum in loco manere statuisset*, As he had made up his mind to stay there. Remember that *cum* ('when') and *qua* ('where') are relative not interrogative; see 37. Be careful to use the interrogative words in the indirect questions in this ex.: 'I don't know when he went away or where he is,' *Quando discesserit, ubi sit nescio*.

Quaero means 'to try to find'; hence 'to look for,' 'search for'; also 'to try to find out,' hence 'to ask.'

Quaero librum, I am looking for my book; *Quaero ex te ubi sit*, I ask you where it is. Note that *Quaero ex te*, not *Rogo te*, is the usual Latin for 'I ask you (a question)': the impersonal passive seems at first a little awkward, *ex te quaeritur*, *ex te quaesitum est*, *cum ex te quaesitum esset* (when you were asked, being asked).

Remember to use the accusative in Latin when motion is implied: he came to me in the garden, *ad me in hortum venit*.

EXERCISE 5

Cum is to be used in every sentence, in some sentences more than once.

1. When you write to your father you will say that you are now getting better. Ask him when he is coming to see us.
2. Being uncertain where you were, I did not care to write a long letter lest our intimate conversation might come into the hands of other people.
3. When he heard this, he saw that prompt measures were necessary.

1. *dico* is used for 'I say' in writing.
get better: see 'recover.'

2. I did not care to: use *nolo*.
intimate, *familiāris*.

alius=other; *alienus*, belonging to others; *res alienae*, the affairs of other people.

3. *audio* means I hear with my ears; *cognosco* means I hear in the sense I get to know, I receive information, as in the sentence 'I heard that you were in town'; *video* means I see with my eyes; *intellego*, I see with my mind, perceive. In this sentence *intellego* must obviously be used, and *cognosco* will give better sense than *audio*.

prompt measures: say 'he saw that they must act promptly.'

4. Seeing that he is two days' march away, what reason is there why you should feel afraid?
5. Though he might easily have escaped from prison, Socrates would not *do so*.
6. It was said that the shrine was not far from Antioch. When they were searching for it, they found a Greek statue of marvellous beauty. When they found this, they brought it to the Governor in the city.
7. Being asked why he had made a plot against the Governor, he would not answer.
8. As he would not answer he was thrown into prison.
9. When I get to my country-house, I do nothing and am absolutely idle.
10. As we have no soldiers we must carry on the struggle by craft.
11. Being out of health I decided to go to my country-house: when I got there I found that the weather was not good for fishing. So I amused myself with my books.
12. Being doubtful which had done it, he condemned them both to death.
13. When you have collected the soldiers in one place, you will be able to start.

4. to be two days' march away, *bidui iter abesse* (*biduum*, a period of two days).

6. it is not far distant from Antioch, *non longe abest ab Antiochēa*. shrine, *aedicula*, diminutive of *aedes*, temple.
of marvellous beauty: abl. of quality.

Governor, *Praetor*, *-ōris*.

9. to be absolutely idle, *plānē cessare*.

10. I struggle, carry on a struggle, *contendo* (3).
craft, *dōlus* (2).

11. I fish, *pisces capto* (1).

14. When you write to me write in Latin. I used to write in Latin when I wrote to my teacher when I was a boy.
15. Considering that she is more concerned about the safety of the state than about her own safety, it is not seemly that we should feel afraid.
16. He said this and then withdrew.
17. Being hungry I returned as quickly as I could.

14. I used to do it when I was a boy, (*ego*) *puer faciebam*. *puer* is in apposition to the subject: I, a boy, used to do it. So, He did the same when consul, *eadem consul fecit*.

15. 'she' is emphatic and must be expressed. to be concerned, *perturbari*.

16. I withdraw, *discedo* (3).

VII

THE PARTICIPLES

73. It is not easy to use the participles correctly and idiomatically. It will save you trouble if you can get a clear notion as to what participles there are and what they mean.

1. Transitive Verb.—Vincō (hostem), *I conquer (my enemy)*.

Active Voice.

Present Participle. Vincens hostem, (*While*) *conquering my enemy*.

Perfect Participle. *None*. ['Having conquered the enemy' must be translated by turning it round into the passive and saying, *hoste victo*, 'the enemy having been conquered,' or *hostem victum* or some other case as may be necessary to suit the rest of the sentence, or by a subordinate clause such as *cum hostem vicisset*. Beware of writing *victus hostem*.]

Future Participle. Victurus hostem, *Being about to conquer the enemy*.

Passive Voice.

Present Participle. *None.* [You will not feel the need of one: 'While being led in he asked' will be easily turned by a subordinate clause: *cum adduceretur quæesivit.*]

Perfect Participle. *Victus, Having been conquered.*

Future Participle. *None.*

2. Intransitive Verb.—*Venio, I come.*

Active Voice.

Present Participle. *Veniens, (While) coming.*

Perfect Participle. *None.* [As an intransitive verb has no passive, except in the impersonal usage, *ventum est*, etc., we cannot imitate *hoste victo*: we must therefore use a subordinate clause to express the English 'having come,' *cum venisset*. Beware of writing *ventus* for 'having come.']

Deponent verbs, whether transitive like *sequor*, or intransitive like *morior*, have all three participles and are therefore the easiest to use:

Present Participle. *Sequens, (while) following.*

Past Participle. *Secutus, having followed.*

Future Participle. *Secuturus, about to follow.*

74. The present participle in Latin represents an action as contemporaneous with the action of the principal verb: for instance the sentence *flens oravit auxilium*, 'shedding tears he begged for help,' tells us that the weeping and the begging for help went on at the same time. The English participle in *-ing* sometimes represents, like the Latin present participle, contemporaneous action, sometimes prior action: we

say, for instance, 'Hearing this he went away' meaning that he went away after he had heard it: in Latin *audiens discessit* would mean 'he went off listening.' Again, 'Being defeated he was put to death' evidently means 'he was defeated and then put to death,' *Victus interfectus est*. As a practical rule, do not use the present participle in Latin unless you can express the English with 'while.'

75. There are one or two verbs which form an apparent exception to this rule: it is quite correct to write *Mihi quaerenti respondit*, 'On my asking this he answered,' though obviously the asking precedes the answering, and one would expect *Quod cum quaesivissem respondit*. The reason appears to be that *quaero* does not correspond exactly to *I ask* but means rather *I try to find out* so that *Mihi quaerenti respondit* means 'When I was trying to find out he answered.' *Peto*, 'I ask for, I try to get,' is used in the same way.

76. The above hints may help you to answer the question, What participle, if any, ought I to use? Present or past? Active or passive? We now pass on to another difficulty: What case is the participle to be put in? The ablative absolute occurs so frequently that many students fall into the mistake of putting the ablative where some other case ought to be used. 'When I was walking in he stepped out' must be *Me ingrediente egressus est*. With this ablative absolute contrast the five following sentences, and see if you understand why the ablative absolute would be impossible in any of them: note that the wording of the English will not help you.

- Nom. *When I was walking in I saw him,*
 Ingrediens vidi eum. [Here the participle agrees with *ego* implied in *vidi*.]
- Acc. *When I was walking in he saw me,* Ingredi-
 entem me vidit. [Here the participle agrees with *me* which is the object of *vidit*.]
- Gen. *When he was walking in I caught sight of his head,* Ingredientis vidi caput.
- Dat. *When he was walking in I gave him the letter,* Ingredienti epistulam dedi.
- Abl. (but not abl. abs.) *He was seen by his daughter as she came in,* Ab ingrediente filia visus est.

Only use the ablative absolute when you cannot work the participle into the construction of the sentence. The ablative absolute is a parenthesis, *put into* the sentence, never making a part of the construction: it may be shut off by commas: *Ille, me ingrediente, egressus est*. In the other five sentences it is impossible to put a comma anywhere.

77. The participle is used in Latin in many sentences in which it would not be correct, or at any rate not idiomatic, to use a participle in English. Some of the more common ways of rendering the Latin participle are collected here:

(a) Sometimes, of course, we use a participle in English:

The envoys sent by Antonius bring word, Legati ab Antonio missi nuntiant.

They approach him begging and imploring . . .
 Adeunt orantes atque obsecrantes.

77 (*continued*)

(b) Sometimes we add 'while' or 'when' or 'if' to the English participle:

While watching over the king he was also a protection to us, Regem tuens et nobis praesidio erat.

When caught (or, If caught) he will not be dangerous to you, Captus periculo vobis non erit.

(c) We often translate a Latin participle by a subordinate clause:

1. A relative clause.

The envoys who had been sent by Pompeius brought word, Legati a Pompeio missi nuntiaverunt.

I obey a voice which never urges me on, but often calls me back, Pareo divinae cuidam voci nunquam impellenti, saepe revocanti.

2. A clause introduced by 'when,' 'while,' 'now that,' 'after,' 'as' (= 'when') etc.:

When I was questioning him he made no answer,
Quaerenti mihi nihil respondit.

Now that the ships are burned they cannot go back,
Navibus incensis redire non possunt.

Now the king is dead, Rege mortuo.

When he was on his way back I saw him, Redeuntem vidi.

The city was founded by Aeneas as he was flying from Troy, Urbs ab Aenea a Troia fugiente condita est.

As I was returning he told me, Mihi redeunti nuntiavit.

77 (*continued*)

3. A clause introduced by 'as' (= 'because'):

As he was driven back from Antioch he lost hope,

Ab Antiochea reiectus desperavit.

As I heard no voice I began to feel afraid, Nulla

voce audita pertimescebam.

4. A clause introduced by 'though':

Though she tried to speak she could not, Conata

loqui non potuit.

Though he was driven back he did not lose hope,

Reiectus non desperavit.

5. A clause introduced by 'if':

If you are beaten you will not be allowed to enter the

city, Victo in urbem redire non licebit.

Many of these sentences might be expressed as well by subordinate sentences in Latin. We may say for instance

Si victus eris in urbem tibi redire non licebit.

This is very much like

Victo in urbem redire non licebit.

but, obviously, there is a difference. We cannot say which is the better way of translating the sentence into Latin without seeing the context from which it is taken. No rules can be given to guide you as to whether you should translate by a participle or a subordinate clause; the participle is generally to be preferred, provided that it makes the meaning quite clear.

(d) We often translate the participle by a co-ordinate clause:

He took the city and burned it, Urbem captam incendit.

77 (*continued*)

*I tried but was not successful, Conatus nihil effeci.
 So they brought him the book and he read it, or, So
 the book was brought and he read it, Itaque
 librum ad-latum legit.*

Here the English construction cannot be imitated in Latin: *urbem cepit et incendit* is not good Latin; *et* is not used to connect verbs in this way. If a participle cannot be used in a sentence of this type you should turn it by a subordinate clause:

*He arrived there and ordered . . ., Quo cum venisset
 imperavit . . .*

(e) An abstract substantive is often the best English equivalent:

*After the capture of the city he dismissed his men
 to their winter-quarters, Urbe capta milites in
 hiberna dimisit.*

*The news of the victory reassured the citizens, Nuntiata
 victoria firmiores fecit civium animos.*

With the help of his mother, Adiuvante matre.

Since the foundation of the city, Post conditam urbem.

(f) Miscellaneous translations:

With tears he begged for help, Flens oravit auxilium.

They fled in terror, Perterriti fugerunt.

*In my sleep he appeared to me, Dormienti mihi
 visus est.*

*Without success, or, Unsuccessful, Re infecta (the
 thing not being accomplished: from in, not
 and facio).*

78. We often use a present participle in English agreeing with the subject of the sentence to represent the cause of the action; we say, for instance, 'Being unable to go out I sent a note,' 'Being doubtful who had done it he acquitted them all.' In sentences of this type the usual Latin equivalent of our present participle is *cum* with the subjunctive: *Cum ipse exire non possem epistulam misi, Cum dubitaret quis fecisset absolvit omnes.* In the same way

Seeing, cum vidisset (i.e. when he had seen with his eyes), or cum intellexisset (i.e. when he had understood).

Thinking, cum putaret (i.e. because he was thinking).

Contrast the following sentences in which the present participle is rightly used: notice that it does not represent the cause:

Dixit ridens, He said with a smile.

Per Graeciam iter faciens Athenas venit, While marching through Greece he came to Athens.

79. The perfect participles of many deponent verbs are used where we might expect the present:

arbitratus, thinking (having come to the conclusion),

veritus, fearing (having got into a fright),

admiratus, wondering (having been startled).

These are often used to represent the cause:

Thinking it undesirable to linger he set off, Non morandum esse arbitratus profectus est.

EXERCISE 6

A participle is to be used in each sentence.

1. He had his dinner and went away to bed.
2. When I was asleep my mother appeared to me.
3. Terrified by the dream I fled.
4. We attacked the enemy and beat them.
5. With tears they begged me to protect them.
6. The news of the arrival of Pompeius will reassure every one.
7. So the prisoner was brought in and said that the enemy had no hope of victory.
8. When the letter was brought in no one could read it.
9. We delivered the letter and at once left the house.
10. He kissed his mother and begged her to give him *some* money: he had, he said, been away from home three months, but he had let no day pass without writing to her.
11. Touched by his prayers she ordered money to be brought.

1. The verb *cēno* (1), 'I have dinner,' has a deponent participle, *cenatus*, 'having dined.'

I go away to bed, *cubitum discedo*: *cubitum* is the supine of *cubare*, 'to lie down,' so the phrase means literally 'I go away in order to lie down.'

5. to protect them: see note on *se* and *eum* (33-35).

7. to bring a man in, *adducere* (to lead).

8. to bring a thing in, *ad-ferre* (to carry).

10. Omit 'he said,' which is implied in 'begged': use the accusative and infinitive as you would if *dixit* were expressed.

I let no day pass without thinking, *nullum diem esse patior quin putem*.

11. Touched: say 'moved.
prayers, *præces* (3).

12. When the money was brought by the servant she gave it to the boy.
13. Since the expulsion of the kings, since the liberation of the state by Brutus, no one has been called king.
14. If he is beaten he will not be willing to return.
15. They said that he had been murdered and thrown into a cart.
16. In answer to my questions the servant said she was not at home.
17. Such was his influence that even in his absence we could not resist him.
18. When he reached Rhodes on his way back from Syria he heard that Clodius had been killed by Milo.
19. After killing the traveller he robbed him of his clothes.
20. Though acquitted of the capital offence he was kept five years in prison.

13. Use *expello* and *libero* (1).

15. cart, *plaustrum*.

17. influence, *auctoritas*.

18. Rhodes, *Rhōdus*, a small island ; see 2.

Milo, *Mīlo*, *-ōnis*.

EXERCISE 7

A participle is to be used in each sentence.

1. When I warned you not to give him anything you did not believe me.
2. He would not listen to me when I was warning him that plots were being made against the king.
3. Being warned of these dangers I thought it best to go away as quickly as possible.
4. When the plot was disclosed they begged the king to pardon them : if he would spare them they would go away and never return.
5. Moved by fear of the danger hanging over him he summoned the leading men of the state to his presence.
6. I was warned by a traveller who was passing that my house was on fire. I do not know who set it on fire.
7. He advanced to the river and pitched his camp.

Moneo te de periculo, I warn you of the danger.

Moneo te eum fugisse, I warn you that he has fled.

Moneo te ne eas, I warn you not to go.

Moneo te quid sit faciendum, I warn you what to do.

Insidias facio tibi, I make a plot against you.

Pate-facio, I disclose (from *patēre*, 'to lie open'; hence, 'I cause it to lie open, I make it clear').

to be on fire, *flagrāre*.

to set on fire, *incendēre*.

to put in chains, *vincire*.

to flog, *virgis caedēre* (to beat with rods).

3. it is best to go : use the gerund.

4. if he would . . . : this is oratio obliqua depending on 'they said' which is implied in 'they begged.' See 27.
and never : not *et numquam* ; see 41.

8. In the month of November he finished the war and dismissed his army to their winter-quarters: he himself started for Italy without delay.
9. As we disembarked he came to meet us.
10. He concealed his hatred and pretended that he was friendly to us.
11. Considering that an inquiry is being held as to the murder of a fellow-creature it is not seemly to laugh.
12. What shall I say of Socrates, over whose death I am wont to shed tears as I read Plato?
13. When I was at Tusculum, a boy sent from Rome by your sister handed me a letter which had been brought to her from you, and gave me a message that the courier would set off from Rome to you that very day. Hence I was compelled to write a very short letter.
14. If you go in you won't be allowed to come out.
15. Orders were given that he should be put in chains and flogged.

8. For the names of the months see 163.

11. I hold an inquiry as to, *quaero de* . . . fellow-creature, *homo*.

12. I shed tears over the death, *morti illacrimor*.

13. at Tusculum, *in Tusculano* (more literally, on my Tusculan estate).

handed = 'gave.'

courier, *tabellarius* (letter-carrier).

Hence: say 'Thus it resulted,' *eo factum est*.

14. Use *ingredior* and *egredior*, compounds of *gradior* (3), 'to step.' The English sentence contains eleven words: the Latin will have four.

EXERCISE 8

In this exercise use a participle whenever you can. Do not suppose that an English participle can always be represented by a Latin participle. For instance, if you want to translate 'Having reached his home he gave the message' you may feel that a participle ought to be used to translate 'Having reached'; but as *pervenire* has no past participle you must write *Cum domum pervenisset*.

1. Rising from my bed I ran to the window.
2. When the theft was discovered we hurried to the city to inform the praetor. Arrived there we heard that the thief had already been arrested and flogged.
3. He replied with a smile that the king on receipt of this message had shut himself up in prison.
4. The next day having reached Paris we received your letter.
5. We seized the bridge and sent horsemen to look for the Britons. And they when they saw the number of our soldiers were panic-stricken and gave themselves up.
6. Why did you not listen to my advice? When you were going out I told you some trouble was impending.

thief, *fūr*.

theft, *fūrtum*.

discover, *cognosco* (3).

arrest, *cipio* (3).

I shut him up in, *includo* (3) *eum in* (acc.).

5. look for, *quaero*.

6. Say 'why didn't you obey me when I gave you advice? For when you were going out . . .' The connecting link *enim* (which is placed after the first word) is necessary in Latin.

7. And so though he summoned them all to his presence, he could not find out how large the island was nor what kind of men inhabited it.
8. Wishing to provide for the safety of his wife and children he retired. The result was that the whole province revolted.
9. Having recovered from this illness he sailed to Italy. Arrived there he spent many days in visiting the most beautiful cities of that country.
10. Being unable to find out where he was lingering, I decided it was my duty to act without delay and not to wait for his return.
11. Caesar gave orders that he should encamp near Ravenna, repair his ships and follow him to Greece.
12. Finding they could do nothing they retired, and none of them could be persuaded to make a second attempt.
13. Thinking that it would be impossible to finish the war before the winter, he arranged terms of peace.

7. Arrange thus : 'neither how great was the size of the island, nor what kind of (*qualis*) men inhabited it could he find out.'

9. Say 'in visiting (gerundive) the cities which that country has most beautiful.'

10. duty : express by the gerund ; see 89.

12. find : use *intellego*.

do, *efficio*.

be persuaded to : see 3 and 10.

I make a second attempt, I try again, *iterum experior* (4).

VIII

THE INFINITIVE, GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

80. *Iucundum est legere, Reading is pleasant.*

Hic sedet legens, Here he sits reading.

If you compare these two sentences you will see that the word 'reading' is used in two different senses. In the first it is a substantive, meaning the act of reading; in the second it is an adjective, meaning engaged in reading. It is not difficult to distinguish these two uses of the English words ending in *-ing*; if you feel at all doubtful as to whether you have a verbal substantive or a participle before you, you should try whether you can put before the word ending in *-ing* such an expression as 'the act of,' 'the habit of,' 'the pursuit of': if any such expression can be added, without altering the sense, you have clearly the substantive not the adjective; for example ['the pursuit of] learning is difficult, ['the habit of] lying is disgraceful.' The words added in brackets clearly do not alter the meaning, so you may conclude that 'learning' and 'lying' are here used as substantives and translate *discere est difficile, turpe est mentiri*. If the word ending in *-ing* is a participle you cannot add such an expression as 'the act of' without altering or destroying the meaning; for instance, 'He sits here [the act of] reading' is clearly not sense.

If you have understood the above you will see why the following argument is false: 'Riding is pleasant. I am riding. Therefore I am pleasant.' Of course this is ridiculous, but do you see exactly where the argument fails?

81. In Latin the infinitive is used as a substantive in the nominative or accusative case, but it cannot be used with prepositions :

Nom. Discere est difficile, *Learning is difficult.*

Acc. Cupimus discere, *We desire to learn.*

With the latter sentence compare *Cupimus pecuniam*, 'we desire money,' and observe that *discere* is the object of *cupimus*, just as *pecuniam* is.

The infinitive though used as a substantive is still a verb and may govern a case :

Aurum habere praeclarum mihi videtur, *The possession of gold (the having gold) seems a fine thing to me.* [*Habere* is the subject of the sentence.]

Cupit habere aurum, *He desires the possession of gold.* [*Habere* is the object of *cupit*.]

In both sentences *aurum* is the object of *habere*; in both *habere* is used as a substantive, in the first in the nominative, in the second in the accusative case.

The infinitive is used as a substantive only in the nominative and accusative cases; the other cases are supplied by the gerund, and the gerund is used with prepositions; we say *ad discendum*, 'with a view to learning,' not *ad discere*.

We may, therefore, show the declension of the verbal substantive thus :

Nom. Mentiri est inhonestum, *Lying is dishonourable.*

Acc. Cupit mentiri, *He wants to lie.*

Propensus est ad mentiendum, *He has propensities towards lying, He has a tendency to tell lies.*

Gen. Cupidus est mentiendi, *He is desirous of lying, He is longing to lie.*

Dat. Operam dat mentiendo, *He gives his attention to lying, He takes trouble about it.*

Abl. Patrem mentiendo decipit, *He deceives his father by lying.*

The dative is very uncommon. *Ad* with the accusative, *in* with the ablative, and *causā* with the genitive are very common. Some prepositions are not used with the gerund: you cannot say *Sine rogando* for 'without asking.'

82. The gerund may be used intransitively, i.e. without an accusative object, or it may have such an object, provided that it is a neuter pronoun or adjective: *aliquid rescribendi causā*, 'for the sake of sending you some answer,' *ad plura scribendum*, 'with a view to writing more.'

If the object is not a neuter adjective or pronoun, the gerundive generally¹ takes the place of the gerund and attracts the substantive or pronoun into agreement with it. So instead of

epistulam scribendi causā

write

epistulae scribendae causā, *with a view to writing a letter.*

The meaning is the same; the gerund is the substantival, the gerundive the adjectival form.

Examples:

Vincendi causā, *For the sake of winning the victory.*

¹ After a preposition invariably

Potestatem mihi facit adeundi ad filiam, *He grants me permission to go to see my daughter* (more literally, *he gives me the power of going etc.*).

Beate vivendi cupiditate incensi omnes sumus, *Every one of us burns with the longing for a happy life.*

Reginae vincendae causā, *In order to conquer the queen.*

Occasio defendendae urbis, *An opportunity of (or, for) defending the city.*

In agris vastandis decem dies consumpsit, *He spent ten days in devastating the country.*

Ad se conservandam, *With a view to securing her own safety.*

Sui conservandi causā, *With a view to securing his (or, her) own safety.*¹

Only the direct (i.e. accusative) object of a verb can be attracted. We write *navium parandarum causā*, 'with a view to getting the vessels ready,' instead of *naves parandi causā*. But we could not imitate this attraction with such a verb as *pāreo*, which has an indirect (i.e. dative) object; we must write *Deis parendi causā*, 'with a view to obeying the gods.' In fact a verb used intransitively has no gerundive form.²

¹ *Mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri* were originally neuter forms, the genitives of *meum, tuum* etc. Hence the gerundive in agreement with them is always in the neuter singular. Therefore write *Tui videndi occasio*, 'an opportunity of seeing you,' whether the person referred to as 'you' be masculine or feminine, and *nostri videndi occasio*, not *nostri videndorum occasio*, in spite of the plural meaning of *nostri*.

² The more advanced student should note that there are a few exceptions to this rule: *utor, fruor, fungor, potior, rescor*, though they govern the ablative, have gerundives like transitive verbs; for instance, *Tenendus est voluptatis fruendae modus*; *In spem venerant potiundorum castrorum*. But these gerundives are not used as predicates with the verb 'to be': *utendum est aetate*, not *utenda est aetas*.

EXERCISE 9

1. Not the possession of gold, but the holding sway over those who possess gold, seems a fine thing to me.
2. Teaching is difficult, learning is easy.
3. We learn by teaching. By teaching boys we ourselves learn.
4. We spent ten days in making the bridge.
5. To err is human, to forgive divine.
6. We were compelled to wait several days in order to repair the ships.
7. While I was in prison I was not granted permission to write a letter.
8. They hoped by the murder of Caesar to set their country free.
9. When I saw him setting off, I thought it was an excellent opportunity for escape.
10. When all preparations had been made for setting off the weather was not suitable for a voyage.
11. Do we not all long for a good and happy life?
12. Everything is ready for an attack on the city.
13. I am longing to see you, my dear Tulliola.

Many of the words for this exercise will be found in 80-82, but not in the dictionary. Use the gerund or gerundive when possible.

1. I hold sway over, *impero* (dative).
5. 'It is the way of men to err, of the gods to pardon those who have erred.'
6. wait, *morari*.
several: 'not a few.'
in order to repair: 'for the sake (*causā*) of repairing.'
8. the murder of Caesar: use the verb *interficio*. You will often find that Latin uses the gerund or gerundive or past participle where we use a substantive. Bear this in mind in doing the following sentences.
13. I am longing: use *cupidus sum* with genitive
my dear Tulliola, *Tulliola mea*.

14. When he asked whether we had come to hear Antonius, we replied, "We have come with the object of hearing, not Antonius, but you."
15. Is not the mind of man nourished by learning and thought? Is not the greatest pleasure got from learning?
16. He seems to have a bent, not only for learning, but also for teaching.
17. On being asked why he had learned nothing, he replied that he had had no opportunity for reading.
18. Does the art of living seem difficult to you? To kill one's self, what is it but to leave one's post without the orders of the General?
19. If an opportunity were offered me for setting my country free, I would eagerly seize it.

14. with the object, *causā* or *gratiā*.

15. thought, i.e. reflection : use *cogito* (1).

I get the greatest pleasure from, *capio summam voluptatem ex* . . .

16. *propensus ad*, inclined towards, having a bent for, or prone to : participle from *propendere*.

17. for reading : genitive.

18. what is it but . . ., *quid aliud est nisi* . . .

I leave my post . . ., *de statione decedo* (3).

19. offer, *dāre*.

eagerly, *āvīdē*.

seize, *arripio* (3).

THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE USED AS PREDICATES

83. We have seen that the gerund and gerundive are used in the accusative with prepositions, and in the genitive, dative, and ablative to supply those cases of the verbal substantive.

We shall now see that the nominative case and the accusative without a preposition are used in a different way.

The nominative. The gerund and gerundive are used in the nominative with the verb 'to be' to signify obligation, necessity, duty, and similar ideas. For instance

(a) *Proficiscendum est, A start must be made.*

(b) *Epistula scribenda est, A letter should be written.*

84. If the verb is used intransitively¹ the gerund is used as in (a); if the verb is used transitively (as *scribo epistulam*; passive, *epistula scribitur*), the gerundive is used as in (b). Remember that the same verb may be used either transitively or intransitively: for instance if I say *scribo*, 'I am writing,' I use *scribo* intransitively (just like *morior*, 'I am dying') and so I should say *scribendum est*, 'I must write': but it would not be good Latin to say *scribendum est epistulas*.

It will save trouble if you realise that no intransitive verb has a gerundive (for our present purpose we may ignore the exceptions mentioned in the note on p. 82, n. 2), and that the gerundive belonging to a transitive verb can only be used when the verb is used in a transitive sense.

¹ Compare 3.

Intransitive Verb

Active. Ambulo, *I am walking.*

Passive (impersonal). Ambulatur, *A walk is going on.*

Gerund (impersonal). Ambulandum est (mihi), *A walk is necessary (for me).*

Transitive Verb

Active. Scribo epistulam, *I am writing a letter.*

Passive (personal). Epistula scribitur, *A letter is being written.*

Gerundive (personal). Epistula scribenda est, *A letter ought to be written.*

The same verb used intransitively

Active. Scribo, *I am writing.*

Gerund (impersonal). Scribendum est (mihi), *Writing is necessary (for me), I must write.*

85. *The accusative.* After a verb of saying or thinking the verb 'to be' will, of course, be in the infinitive, and the gerund or gerundive in the accusative.

Dixit proficiscendum esse, *He said a start should be made.*

Putavit epistulam esse scribendam, *He thought that a letter ought to be written.*

86. In this kind of sentence the gerund and gerundive are used as predicates: in *epistula scribenda est*, for instance, *epistula* is the subject and *scribenda est* the predicate, i.e. that which is said about the subject.

The gerundive is most commonly used as a pre-

dicare with the verb 'to be': it is also so used with some other verbs, such as *dāre*, 'to give,' *curare*, 'to take care that . . .'

Epistulam mihi legendam dedit, *He gave me the letter to read (He gave me the letter: it was to be read).*

Epistulam mittendam curavit, *He had the letter sent.*

Curo is of course connected with the substantive *cura*: compare the phrase *Id mihi curae est*, 'It is to me an object of care, I am anxious about it.' *Curo* may be followed by the gerundive or by *ut*. With the gerundive *curare* corresponds to the English 'have,' in such a sentence as

He had the dinner prepared (i.e. caused it to be prepared), Cenam parandam curavit.

87. With the gerund and gerundive the agent is generally put in the dative:

Eundum est mihi, *I must go.*

Eundum est tibi, *You must go.*

Eundum est ei, *He must go.*

Eundum est nobis, *etc.*

Urbs mihi capienda est, *I must take the city,*

Urbs tibi capienda est, *You must take the city;*

and so on.

But if the verb is accompanied by another dative, the agent is expressed by *a*, *ab* with the ablative in order to avoid ambiguity. You must not write *Pecunia danda est tibi mihi*, for it will not be clear whether you mean 'You ought to give the money to me' or 'I ought to give the money to you.' Write, therefore, if you mean the latter, *Pecunia tibi a me danda est*. In the same way do not write *Parcendum est ei nobis* for 'We must spare him,' but *Parcendum est ei a nobis*.

88. Beware of writing *eundus sum* for 'I ought to go,' or *vincendus sum* for 'I ought to conquer.' *Eundum est mihi* really means 'there's a journey for me'; hence comes the sense a journey is for me a necessity or a duty, but you will find it convenient to regard the form as a passive and to translate it to yourself as 'A journey ought to be made by me': by paraphrasing thus you will make it impossible to fall into the blunder *eundus sum*. The gerundive used as a predicate is passive, even from deponents: so, of course, 'I ought to conquer the Gauls' must be rendered *vincendi sunt Galli mihi*, 'The Gauls ought to be conquered by me' (more exactly, 'For me the Gauls are meet to be conquered'). The mistake referred to is common because the gerund and gerundive, when used in the way shown in 80–82, are translated by the active in English: for instance, *Causa eundi erat*, 'The reason for going was . . .': *Spes vincendi Caesaris*, 'The hope of conquering Caesar.'

89. A few examples will make the matter clearer: note in what various ways the gerund and gerundive are rendered in English: 'I had better,' 'I ought,' 'it is my duty,' 'it is necessary,' etc.

Redeundum esse putavi, *I thought it my duty to return.*

Intellexi proficiscendum esse, *I saw that I ought to start.*

Statui exspectandum esse, *I decided that I had better wait.*

Non diutius morandum esse arbitratus, *Thinking it right to delay no longer.*

Hostium audaciam comprimendam esse dixit, *He said that the audacity of the enemy must be crushed.*

Nihil temere agendum est, *We must not act rashly.*
Non credendum est homini, *The fellow is not to be trusted.*

EXERCISE 10

1. We must either win or die.
2. If I forgive you, you must spare him.
3. When I heard this I decided that it was my duty to wait for Bibulus to arrive. In the meantime I thought it right to send you this information.
4. I will have your books returned to you. Don't you think I am to be trusted?
5. Each man should use his own judgment.
6. He teaches us that we should forget wrongs done to us.
7. He should be encouraged not to let the opportunity slip away.
8. Do we not all think fame preferable to wealth?
9. If he wins he will give the soldiers the city to plunder: do you really think that it is for us to help him?
10. Have we not learned from our fathers that we must not act treacherously, that we must conquer our foes by valour not by wickedness?

2. 'must' is here future, 'you will have to spare.'

3. send information, *scribo*. In this exercise use the gerund or gerundive whenever it is possible. Many of the sentences could, of course, be done in other ways.

5. Each man, *quisque*. Note the position of *quisque* in this sentence: *Suum quisque noscat ingenium*, Let each man know his own nature; see 46.

6. say 'wrongs received' (*accipio*).

7. I let . . . slip away, *dimitto*. *Mitto* means 'to let go' as well as 'to send': hence the sense of *amitto*, to lose.

8. Use *prae-pono* for 'I prefer.'

10. treacherously: abl. of *insidiae*, treachery.

11. He gave up the dead body of Eumenes to his friends for burial.
12. To me, however, it seems that death is even to be longed for. Either I must die or I must live in a free state.
13. If the Gauls attempt to make war we shall have to summon C. Marius from the lower world to command our forces.
14. I will have a bridge made across the river, that you may come to me the more easily.
15. This done I handed over the army to my brother Quintus to take to their winter-quarters. I returned to Laodicea.

11. I give up (i.e. to hand over), *trado*.
say 'the dead Eumenes.'

sepelire, to bury.

12. *optare*, to long for.

13. *excitare*, to summon.

from the lower world, *ab inferis* (from the people down below).

to command: use *qui* with subj. ; see 8.

14. *pontem facio in flumine*.

15. hand over, *dare*.

I take: meaning 'I lead,' *duco*.

I returned: 'I' must be translated ; see 47.

EXERCISE 11

Do not use the dictionary more than you are obliged but try to think of the words for yourself. In this exercise, for example, do not look up 'departure' but think what it means: of course, it will be translated by a verb. You probably know the Latin for to 'commence': if not, you must think of some other English word which has the same meaning and look that up. In the same way you will probably be able to get the word for to 'get better.'

1. We must make all preparations for departure, even though we are doubtful in which direction we are to march.
2. Neither Pompeius nor Caesar is to be trusted: you must not act rashly, but you must wait till you know which is going to win. When you have discovered this, then but not before you must praise the one and blame the other.
3. Having at last made up his mind to start he had everything taken on board the ship. The following morning as he could not set sail, the wind being against him, he returned to Athens and spent three days in visiting the temples.
4. I have no doubt he has told you that Julia is out of health. That was the reason of our coming to Italy. We have been staying here now more than five months. The doctor says we must remain till she gets better. Meanwhile I have much to write.

1. even though: say 'even if.'

in which direction: say 'whither.'

2. then but not before, *tum vero* (then of a truth).

4. I am out of health, *infirmā valetudine sum* (I am in weak health).

We have been staying . . . : see 58.

to write: use the relative; see 157.

5. When they heard this they all began to shout that the poor wretch should be spared.
6. I recommend you to say to yourself every day that a hot temper is to be resisted.
7. He burned his ships so that there might be no hope of returning home, and commenced his advance into the country of the Indians.
8. As he had gone out for a walk I could not see him.
9. We spent many days in making preparations for wintering on the island; for there seemed now to be no hope of sailing till the summer returned.

6. say to yourself: use *meditor* (1).
hot temper, *iracundia*.

IX

THE INFINITIVE USED AS A SUBSTANTIVE (*continued*)

90. We have seen that the infinitive is used as a substantive in the nominative or accusative case :

1. Nom. Vivere dulce est, *Life is sweet, It is sweet to live* (almost equivalent to *Vita est dulcis*).
2. Acc. Cupit mori, *He desires to die* (not very different from *Cupit mortem*).

It is evident that in (1) *vivere* is the subject of *est*, and that in (2) *mori* is the object of *cupit*.

In some respects, then, the infinitive is like other substantives. But there is this important difference: with the infinitive a subject is implied, if not expressed. If, for example, we translate the sentence *Timere est turpe*, 'Fear is disgraceful,' we do not completely express the meaning of *timere*. If we say 'It is disgraceful that one should feel afraid' or 'for a man to feel afraid' we render by the words 'one' or 'a man' the indefinite subject of *timere*. In other words the infinitive *timere* like the indicative *timet* makes a statement about a subject: it puts before the mind the union of two ideas—subject, some one; predicate, fear. But the statement is dependent, it cannot stand alone, just as the English 'that a man should feel afraid' cannot stand alone. This is the essential difference between the infinitive and other substantives. Now compare the two sentences.

Magnus timor hostium est turpis, *Great fear of the enemy is disgraceful.*

Magnopere timere hostes est turpe, *To greatly fear the enemy is disgraceful.*

You will notice that the infinitive, like the other parts of the verb, has an adverbial attribute (*magnopere*), whereas other

substantives have adjectival attributes (*magnus*). The infinitive governs the same case as the rest of the verb (*hostes*, acc.), other substantives govern a genitive (*hostium*). Further, the infinitive may be active or passive: *timere*, 'the feeling afraid of,' *timeri*, 'the being feared by.' Compare with these two forms the expression *timor hostium* which may mean 'the fear one feels of the enemy' (= *timere hostes*), or 'the fear felt by the enemy' (= *timeri ab hostibus*). Lastly the infinitive has different tenses:

Non tam turpe fuit *vinci* quam *contendisse* decorum est, *There was not so much disgrace in being beaten, as there is honour in having struggled* (It was not disgraceful to be suffering defeat: it is an honour to have struggled).

THE INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT

91. 1. The simple infinitive may be the subject of the sentence

Manere optimum est, It is best to stay.

Here *manere* is the subject to *est*.

2. The subject of the infinitive, if expressed, is in the accusative case:

Me manere est optimum, It is best that I should stay.

Here *me* is the subject to *manere*, and the clause *me manere* is the subject to *est*.

3. If the subject of the infinitive is not expressed it is understood in the accusative case: any word agreeing with the subject of the infinitive will, of course, be in the accusative:

Manere solum est optimum, It is best to remain alone.

Here the clause *manere solum* is the subject to *est*: the subject of *manere* is not expressed: *solum* is in the accusative because it is a predicate agreeing with the subject of *manere*, which is either quite indefinite or is supplied by the context.

92. You will notice that when the subject of the infinitive is not expressed, the English and the Latin usually correspond very closely: *Mentiri turpe est*, 'Lying is disgraceful' or 'It is disgraceful to lie.' But if the subject of the infinitive is expressed we cannot imitate the Latin construction; we cannot translate *Turpe est te mentiri* by 'It is disgraceful you to lie,' but we must render it in some such way as this (1) 'It is disgraceful that you should lie' or (2) 'It is disgraceful for you to lie' or (3) 'Your lying is disgraceful.' Beware of translating the word 'should' in (1) by *debere*, the 'for you' in (2) by *tibi*, or 'your lying' in (3) by *tuum mentiri*.

93. When the infinitive, or a clause of which the verb is an infinitive, is the subject of the sentence, the predicate will consist of

(1) *est*, *videtur* or some other copulative verb with
(a) an adjective in the neuter singular nominative, as

Turpe fuit vinci, *Being beaten was a disgrace*,

or (b) a substantive in the nominative

Sed iam tempus est abire, *But now it is time to go away*,

or (c) a substantive or adjective in the genitive

Sapientis est tempori cedere, *It is wise to yield to circumstances*.

(2) A verb in the third person singular:

Legere me delectat, *Reading charms me*.

See **96-100**.

94. (1) (a) and (b) need no further comment.

(c) We have nothing corresponding to this use of the genitive in English. We cannot say 'It is *of a friend* to do this.' We must therefore represent the sense in various ways; here are a few examples:

Amici est, *It is friendly, It is the duty of a friend, It is for a friend to.*

Stulti est, *It is the act of a fool, It is foolish, stupid.*

Boni viri est hoc facere, *It is natural to a good man to do it, A good man will do it.*

Philosophi est, *It shows a philosophic spirit, It is scientific.*

Parvi animi est, *It shows a paltry spirit.*

95. You can say *Stultum est hoc facere* or *Stulti est*. You can say *Sapientis est hoc facere* but not *Sapiens est*. You can say *Turpe est hoc facere* but not *Turpis est*. The reason is obvious: *Sapiens est* means 'He is a wise man,' and therefore it would be inconvenient to use it for 'It is a wise act'; therefore use *Sapientis est*, which cannot be misunderstood. In the same way *Turpis est* means 'He is a base man,' and therefore, it is inconvenient to use it for 'It is the act of a base man.' For the same reason *Omnium rerum* is the genitive of *omnia*, 'everything'; for *omnium* means 'of everybody.' Do not use as a neuter (without a substantive) any form of an adjective which may be mistaken for a masculine.

EXERCISE 12

In doing this exercise use the genitive as shown in 94 whenever it is possible. Some of the necessary words will be found in 90-95, but not in the dictionary.

1. It is for a friend to warn a friend what to avoid.
2. It was foolish to hope for it, shameless to demand it.
3. Is it an unheard-of thing that a king should be tried for his life?
4. It is the duty of the consul to see what is going on, and to foresee what is likely to happen.
5. It seems to me deplorable that you should have been able to do this with impunity.
6. A good citizen will remember that he ought to help the state in times of difficulty.
7. Does it show a philosophic spirit not to try to find out the reason of every occurrence?
8. It seemed best that the consul himself should remain at Rome.
9. Nothing shows such a narrow, paltry spirit as the excessive love of riches.

1. what to avoid : say 'what he ought to avoid' (gerundive).
avoid, *vitare*.
2. shameless, *impudens*.
3. He is tried for his life, *reus est capitis*; *reus* means the defendant, the accused.
4. likely to happen, *futurum*.
5. deplorable : use *miser*.
6. ought : use *debeo*.
in times of difficulty, *in rebus adversis*.
7. Say 'to seek for the reason why each thing happens' (subj.; see 157).
9. 'so narrow, and so paltry.'
excessive love : 'to love too much.'

10. It was stupid to think of peace when you saw the army in line.
11. Have you never heard that it is for a young man to reverence his elders?
12. It is much more difficult to explain to another how it is to be done than to do it one's self.

10. I think of peace, *pācem cōgīto*.

an army in line, *ācies*.

12. to explain to another, *docere alterum*.

how, *quo modo* (in what way).

Contrast *alter* and *alius*. *Alter* means 'one of two,' so 'a second man,' 'any fellow-creature,' 'one's neighbour.' *Alius* means 'different,' *alii alia amant*, different people like different things, some like one thing some another.

THE INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT (*continued*)

96. The following verbs, among others, are used as predicates with the infinitive as subject. Many of these verbs are used in the third person singular only: such verbs are sometimes called impersonal.

(a) Verbs which may be used transitively, i.e. with an object in the accusative: as *Mentiri te dedecet*, 'Lying ill becomes you,' 'is unseemly in you,' 'it is unbecoming for you to lie.' Note that *te* is the object of *dedecet* not the subject of *mentiri*. The subject of the infinitive is not expressed, if it is identical with the object (whether expressed or understood) of the principal verb. Otherwise it must (of course) be expressed:

Decet caram nobis esse patriam, It is seemly that our country should be dear to us.

Here the whole clause *caram nobis esse patriam* is the subject of *decet*:

decet me loqui, it is fitting (or, seemly) that I should speak.

dedecet me irasci, it is unseemly for me to get angry.

iuvat (from iuvare 'to help'), it is a pleasure:

iuvat me hoc scire, the knowledge of this gives me pleasure, I like to know this.

oportet me hoc dicere, saying this is a duty for me, I ought to say this.

pudet me hoc fecisse, having done it makes me feel ashamed, I am ashamed of having done it.

paenitet me vicisse, having gained the victory brings me regret, I regret that I have won, I am sorry I have won.

delectat me legere, reading charms me, amuses me.

97. (b) *Interest* and *rēfert*.

Interest (from *inter* and *est*) means 'There is (this) between,' 'There is (this) difference,' 'It makes a difference,' 'It is important,' 'It matters.'

In sole lucernam adhibere nihil interest, *To get a lamp when the sun is shining makes no difference.*

The person to whom it makes a difference is put in the genitive (if expressed):

Omnium interest, *It is important to every one.*

But instead of the genitives of *ego*, *tu*, etc., the adjectival pronouns in the ablative singular feminine are used (just as if *causā* were understood: *Mea* [*causa*] *interest*, It makes a difference for my sake, from my point of view).

Interest meā, nostrā, etc., *It is important to me, us, etc.*

98. *Rēfert* has much the same meaning as *interest*, and is used in the same way, but not with genitives. It may be used with the pronouns *meā*, *tuā*, etc., but is more commonly used absolutely, the context showing to whom the action referred to is of importance.

The subject of the infinitive is generally¹ not expressed if the person for whom the action is of importance is identical with the subject of the infinitive, as in

¹ Generally, but it *may* be expressed: in the following sentence the presence of *se* and *me* is clearly due to the contrast between them: 'Hic sua putat interesse *se* re ipsa et gesto negotio, non lege defendi; ego autem mea existimo interesse *me* nulla in disputatione ab Accio videri esse superatum' (Cic. *Cluent.* liv. 149).

Nostra interest vincere, *It is important for us that we should win* [not Nostra interest nos vincere].

Contrast

Nostra interest te vincere, *It is important for us that you should win,*

where *te*, the subject of the infinitive, is obviously necessary.

The rule holds good when there is no genitive or quasi-genitive (like *mea*) representing the person to whom the action is of importance. Thus *Interest vincere* is a complete sentence.

99. *Interest* and *refert* are also very commonly used with indirect questions:

Doleam necne doleam interest, *It makes a difference whether I am in pain or not.*

Magni interest, *It is very important.*

Quantum interest! *What an important difference it makes!*

Plus interest, *It is more important.*

Maxime interest, *It is of the greatest importance.*

Quid interest (nostra) ea cognoscere? *What is the importance of getting to know this? How does it affect our interests? What does it matter?*

EXERCISE 13

Many of the words and phrases given in 96-99 will not be found in the dictionary.

1. A law ought to be short so that it may be understood more easily by the citizens.
2. It is by no means seemly for an orator to get angry, it is not unseemly that he should pretend to be angry.
3. Don't you think it is important to men to know what is going to happen?
4. How does it affect my interests that you should be murdered?
5. When I get to my country-house the mere doing nothing charms me.
6. I wish you would show me what is the importance of good writing: if you can read what I write, what does it matter whether the letters are well formed or not?
7. It is fitting that our country should be dearer to us than ourselves.

2. by no means, *minime* (adv. of *minimus*, lit. very little, to a very slight extent).

3. going to happen: use *sum*.

5. *hoc ipsum nihil agere*, 'this doing nothing taken-by-itself' (*ipsum*). Note *hoc ipsum* agreeing with the infinitive: we have seen that an infinitive cannot have an adjectival attribute: we cannot say *Tuum mentiri*, 'Your lying,' or *Forte pugnare*, 'Brave fighting.' But *ipsum*, *hoc ipsum*, *totum hoc*, are used in this exceptional way: e.g. *Vivere ipsum turpe est nobis*, 'Life itself is a disgrace to us,' i.e. the mere fact of existing [under such a tyranny].

6. I wish you would show me, *Me doceas velim* (see 122).

a well-formed letter, *formosa littera*: in this sense *littera*: as a singular.

'good writing' must be turned by an infinitive: an ordinary substantive cannot be made the subject of *interest*. In the same way 'his health' in 9, and 'this knowledge' (= to know this) in 12.

7. ourselves, *nosmet ipsos*, accusative, attracted to the case of *patriam*. Compare the note to Ex. 16 (12).

8. How does it affect your interests to know where I want to go and what I am going to do?
9. He used to say that his health was of importance not so much to himself as to the state.
10. We do a great many things for the simple reason that to do them is seemly, that it is right, that it is honourable.
11. To the British also it will be more important to have very fast ships than a strongly fortified city.
12. Even the doctors, to whom this knowledge is of the greatest importance, admit that they understand nothing of the matter.

9. not so much, *non tam*.

10. *ob eam unam causam quia*, 'for the one reason that.'
right, *rectus*.

11. strongly fortified, *munitissimus*.

12. even the doctors: 'the doctors themselves.'
of the matter: use the plural.

100. *Verbs used as Predicates with the Infinitive as Subject*

(c) Verbs which govern a dative.

Licet mihi hoc facere, *It is left free to me to do it, I am free to do it, I may do it.*

Libet mihi hoc facere, *It seems well to me to do it, I choose to.*

Prodest mihi hoc facere, *It is an advantage to me to do it.*

Expedit mihi hoc facere, *It is expedient for me to do it, It pays to do it, It is for my interest.*

The subject of the infinitive is not generally¹ expressed if it is identical with the object of the principal verb, whether that object is expressed or not.

1. Expedit (mihi) promittere, *It is expedient for me to promise, or that I should promise [not expedit mihi me promittere].*

Otherwise the subject is, of course, necessary to the meaning :

2. Bonis expedit salvam esse rem publicam, *It is for the interest of good citizens that the country should be safe.*

The subject of the infinitive, though not expressed, may have a predicate which will be in the accusative :

3. Expedit bonas esse vobis, *It is for your interest to be good women.*

But with *licet* this predicate is generally attracted into the dative if the object of *licet* is expressed : compare

¹ It may be expressed if emphatic : 'Quid proderat tibi te expensum illis non tulisse ?' (Cic. *Verr.* i. 102).

4. Cur iis esse *liberis* non licet? *Why may they not be free?*

with

5. *Medios* esse iam non licebit, *Soon we shall not be allowed to be neutral.*

In (4) *liberis* the predicate of the subject of *esse* is attracted into the dative by *iis* the object of *licet*: in (5) *medios* agrees with the implied subject of *esse* there being no dative to attract it.

EXERCISE 14

Many of the words and phrases used in this exercise will not be found in the dictionary. See 96-100.

The following will also be useful :

Prodest mihi, *It is for my advantage.*

Quid prodest eum laudare? *What is the advantage of praising him.*

Valde me iuvat, *I am very much pleased.*

Non dedecet facere, *There is no disgrace in doing it.*

Licet ei esse otioso, *He is free to take a holiday (It is allowed him to be at leisure).* [*Otium*, often contrasted with *negotium*, means freedom from one's ordinary business.]

Licet ei incolumi discedere, *He is free to depart unharmed.*

1. If I chose to accuse him of treason, what defence could he make?
2. Now that the hostages have been brought, you are free to depart unharmed.
3. What is the advantage of my having a country-house if I am so rarely free to take a holiday?
4. I am very much pleased that you have recovered from such a serious illness.
5. I don't know what is the importance of remembering this.
6. It is very important to you fathers that your children should learn this.
7. I am not ashamed of having said it because there is no disgrace in saying it: I am sorry that I said it because it is not for your advantage.

1. what is your defence? *quid defendis?* The rules for conditionals are in 115 ff.

3. rarely, *raro*.

6. Say 'to you, who are fathers.'

8. If he were to ask me that question, I should be
ashamed to admit that I do not understand.
 9. It is shameless your coming in those clothes!
 10. If you don't finish it you won't be allowed to
have a holiday to-morrow.
 11. It is folly for you to pretend you will help him.
9. Say 'dressed thus'; to dress, *vestire*.
come in : use *incedo* (3).

X

THE INFINITIVE AS OBJECT

The Nominative with the Infinitive

101. The infinitive is used as the object of certain verbs :

Ego audeo ire, *I dare to go.*

Here *ire* is the object of *audeo*, just as in the sentence *Hoc audeo*, 'I dare (to do) this,' *hoc* is the object of *audeo*. In this construction the subject of the leading verb is also the subject of the infinitive. The subject of the infinitive is therefore in the nominative, and with this nominative will agree any substantive or adjective belonging as predicate to the infinitive. Hence we write

Ego audeo ire solus, *I dare to go alone,*

Voluit existimari sapiens, *He wanted to be thought clever,*

where *solus* agrees with the subject of *ire*, *sapiens* with the subject of *existimari*. Compare the sentence

Solum ire optimum mihi videtur, *To go alone seems to me the best course,*

where the clause *Solum ire* is the subject of *videtur*. Compare also *Dicit se solum ire*, where the clause *se solum ire* is the object of *dicit*.

102. This use of the infinitive presents few difficulties, because our English infinitive is used with most of the corresponding English verbs. But note in the list of verbs in **103** that we cannot use the simple infinitive to translate *Scio facere* ('I know how to do'). On the other hand, many English verbs which take the simple infinitive have other constructions in Latin: we say, for instance, 'I promise *to come*': the Latin construction with verbs of promising is the accusative and infinitive (future): *promitto me venturum*. We say 'I beg you to do it': Latin: *oro te ut facias*.

103. The simple infinitive (that is to say the infinitive without an accusative as its subject) may be used as the object of the following verbs among others. They are sometimes called auxiliary verbs. Those marked with an asterisk * cannot be combined with a verb in any other way. The others can also have other constructions.

Verbs signifying

i. **POWER** or the want of it. *Possum*,* *queo*,* I can; *nequeo*,* I cannot. To these may be added the less common *scio*, I know how to: *nescio*, I don't know how to: *Vincere scis*, *Hannibal*; *victoria uti nescis*, You know how to win a victory, Hannibal; you don't know how to use your victory.

ii. **DUTY**. *Debeo*,* I ought.

iii. **WILL** and its opposites. *Volo*, I wish, am willing, want: *nolo*, I am unwilling, I do not wish, do not want: *malo*, I prefer, I would rather: *cupio*, I desire: *audeo*,* I dare, I venture to, I have the pluck to: *timeo*, I am afraid to (i.e. through fear I

am unwilling to, = *timore motus nolo*): *vereor*, I don't like to (from a sense of delicacy or reverence I am unwilling to): *timeo ire solus*, I am afraid to go alone: *vereor laudare praesentem*, I don't like to praise a man in his presence: *non dubito scribere*, I don't hesitate to write.

iv. INTENTION or RESOLVE: these are closely connected with the verbs of *will*: *cogito*, I think of doing, intend to do: *quid ad haec respondere cogitas?* what answer do you think of sending to these questions? *statuo*, or *constituo*, I decide to . . . , resolve to . . . , make up my mind to.

v. ENDEAVOUR. *Conor*,* I try. [Note that *nitor ut* . . . is not the Latin for 'I try to . . .']

vi. BEGINNING, CONTINUANCE, END. *Coepi*,* I begin: *desino** *facere*, I cease to do: *desisto facere*, I give up doing, desist from doing.

vii. HABIT. *Consuēscō** (*hoc facere*), I get into the habit of (doing it): *consuēvi*,* I have got into the habit, I am in the habit of . . . : *soleo*,* I am wont, accustomed to. Here we may add *disco*, I am learning to . . .

104. The following verbs take two objects, (1) of the person, (2) of the infinitive:

Iubeo, *I order*. *Sino*, *patior*, *I allow*.

Veto, *I forbid*. *Doceo*, *I teach*.

Iubeo te abire, *I order you to go*
(like *Hoc te iubeo*, *I give you this order*).

Doceo te scribere, *I teach you to write*, *I teach you writing*
(like *Doceo te litteras*, *I teach you literature*).

Observe the difference between this construction (a verb governing an accusative and also an infinitive) and the construction of the accusative and infinitive after a verb of saying or thinking; in this latter construction the accusative is not the object of the leading verb, but the whole clause is the object, so that the verb has one object not two:

Dixit te scribere, *He said that you were writing.*

105. SOME VERBS WHICH ADMIT OF VARIOUS CONSTRUCTIONS

Many of the verbs given in **103** may, as we said, have other constructions than the simple infinitive: here are a few examples: compare the sentences given in **103**; the numbers refer to the classes mentioned in that section:

i. *Scio* takes (a) the simple infinitive when it is equivalent to *possum*, meaning 'By my knowledge I have the power to.' It takes (b) the accusative and infinitive, like other verbs of saying, thinking, and knowing, when it means 'I know that it is so.'

Scio Hannibalem vicisse, I know that Hannibal won the victory. .

It takes (c) the subjunctive of indirect question: .

Scio uter vicerit, I know which of the two won.

iii. Contrast (a) *Volo ire*, 'I want to go,' with (b) *Volo te ire*, 'I want you to go.' In (a) the infinitive has the same subject as the principal verb, in (b) a different subject.

Verbs of fearing take *ne* or *ut* with a different meaning :

Timeo ne solus eas, *I fear you will go alone.*

Dubito may have (a) indirect question :

Dubito possit-ne fieri necne, *I have my doubts whether it can be done or not.*

(b) (if negated), *quin* :

Non dubito quin ille scripserit, *I have no doubt that he wrote it.*

(c) In the sense of to *hesitate*, *dubito* is always negated : you cannot say *Dubito scribere*, 'I hesitate to write.'

Of course the negative sense may be given by turning the sentence into a question. *Quis dubitat scribere?* is a rhetorical way of saying *Nemo dubitat scribere.*

iv. Verbs of intention and resolve combine the two notions of thinking and willing. Hence many of these verbs are used (a) like the verbs of will, with the simple infinitive, (b) like the verbs of thinking, with the accusative and infinitive, and (c) like many verbs of thinking, with an indirect question.

(a) *Constitui cras proficisci*, *I have decided to start to-morrow.* [Here *volo* might take the place of *constitui* without any great change of meaning.]

(b) *Constitui cras proficiscendum esse* or *me cras proficisci debere*, *I have made up my mind that I ought to start to-morrow.* [Here *constitui* is nearly equivalent to *puto*.]

- (c) Nec constituere possum quid sit faciendum,
And I cannot make up my mind what to do (what is to be done).
 - (a) Cogito progredi, *I think of advancing (i.e. I have nearly made up my mind to advance).*
 - (b) Dux suo se periculo progredi cogitat, *The leader reflects that he is advancing at his own risk.*
 - (c) Cogito quid sit faciendum, *I reflect as to what should be done.*
- vii. (a) Disco saltare, *I am learning to dance.*
- (b) A Platone didici id esse verum, *I learned from Plato that this was the truth.*
 - (c) Quales di essent discere voluit, *He wanted to find out what the gods were like.*

EXERCISE 15

1. He wanted to be free from care: he did not want to be and he never was rich.
2. I shall not give up urging and begging Pompeius to do nothing disgraceful. I am afraid that I shall effect nothing.
3. He does not like either to say or to do anything which would appear unmanly.
4. He has made up his mind to go to Britain. I think of going with him.
5. I have not the power or the knowledge to decide the case.
6. He wants to be rich and to be considered so.
7. I do not hesitate to call him clever: I venture to say that he is the cleverest of them all. I don't doubt that he will win fame.
8. I cannot be friendly to him. He ought not to have been so timid.

Use the words given in 101-5 as far as possible. Many of the words will not be found in the dictionary.

The Roman often uses *et . . . et . . .* where we should not say *both . . . and . . .* but simply *and*. So also *nec . . . nec . . .*

Et est et habetur sapiens, He is wise and is considered so.

Nec scit neque unquam sciet, He does not know and he never will know.

1. free from care, *sēcūrus*.
3. unmanly, *pārum virilis*.
4. I go with him: say 'I go (as) his companion.'
5. I decide the case, *id iudico* (1).

9. So he lost his temper and said, You begin to be troublesome to me. Don't you know how to write? I will teach you to hold your tongue.
10. They do indeed desire to be free, but they are afraid to fight.
11. Would you rather look a greater fool than you are or be a greater fool than you look? I am not in the habit of answering such questions.
12. He has learned to be brave. They will urge him to become a soldier.
13. He tried to persuade me to stay with him.
14. If he had known how to use his victory, the war would be over by this time.
15. I have made up my mind to go to Italy. I cannot, however, make up my mind what cities to visit. I think of going to Pompeii.
16. They want to die with their friends rather than alone.
17. I wished you to know this.
18. They do not reflect that this may fall to their lot.
19. They doubt whether it is honourable or mean.

9. lose temper : use *irascor*.

I hold my tongue, *taceo*.

11. look = appear.

14. be over : use *conficio*.

18. it falls to my lot, *mihi accidit*.

may = can.

XI

THE INFINITIVE WITH VERBS OF SAYING AND THINKING

106. Verbs of saying and thinking may be followed by the accusative and infinitive. In this construction the infinitive is used not as a substantive, but as the representative of the indicative: in the sentence *Dixit te scribere* the words *te scribere* represent *ille scribit*. When we speak of verbs of saying and thinking we include all verbs and phrases meaning to make a statement to another, such as *scribo* 'I state in writing,' *significo* 'I show by signs,' and verbs of perception like *video* and *intellego*, and of knowing such as *scio*. Verbs of this class are generally followed in English by the conjunction 'that' with the indicative: as 'I said that¹ he was wrong.' But the verbs *I declare* and *I consider* (among others) may take the accusative and infinitive in English: as 'I declared him to be mad,' 'I considered him to be wrong.' It is a good plan in case of difficulty to turn the sentence into the accusative and infinitive in English: it is easier to realise the force of the Latin. Among the verbs which may take this construction are

¹ 'that' often drops out, 'I told you he was wrong.'

| <i>Saying.</i> | <i>Thinking.</i> | <i>Perceiving and knowing.</i> |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| dico | puto | video |
| nego | existimo | sentio |
| respondeo | arbitror | intellego |
| nuntio | suspīcor | audio |
| doceo, <i>I point out</i> | statuo, <i>I decide</i> | cognosco |
| <i>that . . .</i> | <i>that</i> ¹ . . . | scio |

also such phrases as imply saying or thinking, for instance, *certiorem te facio*; *nuntius advenit*, a messenger came (to tell us) that: *suspīcio est*, there is a suspicion that: *constat*, it is well known that . . .

107. Many of the verbs of saying and thinking are also used with the indirect question construction:

Compare *Dic quid fecerit*, Tell me what he did, with *Dico eum fecisse*, I say that he did it.

108. To the verbs of saying and thinking we must add *simulo*, I pretend, *spero*, I hope, *polliceor* and *promitto*, I promise, *iuro*, I swear, *minor*, I threaten.

With these verbs we often use the simple infinitive in English: (1) He pretended *to be* poor, (2) We hope *to come*, (3) They promised *to do it*. But in Latin the accusative and infinitive are required, and the future infinitive must be used in reference to the future: thus

- (1) Simulavit se esse pauperem.
- (2) Speramus nos venturos (esse).
- (3) Promiserunt se facturos (esse).

¹ With the accusative and infinitive *statuo* is a verb of thinking: *Statuo parandum esse exercitum*, *I decide that it is necessary to prepare the army.*

With the simple infinitive it is a verb of will:

Statuo parare exercitum, *I resolve to prepare the army.*

Compare **103** and **105**.

109. With the verbs of thinking are included the verbs of emotion, such as *gaudeo* and *doleo* and such phrases as *laetus sum*.

Gaudeo te valere, I rejoice (to think) that you are well.

Admiror eum nos secutum esse, I am surprised that he followed us.

110. If we take an example such as *Dicunt Pompeium fuisse timidum*, They say that Pompeius was timid, and change the verb of saying to the passive, we write

Dicitur Pompeius fuisse timidus, Pompeius is said to have been timid.

When the verb of saying is active *Pompeium* is accusative and is the subject of the infinitive; when the verb of saying is passive *Pompeius* is nominative and is subject to the principal verb. The difference between the two constructions may be seen in the English:

‘They declare him (acc.) to have been timid’ and

‘He (nom.) is declared to have been timid.’

In English, however, we generally prefer the impersonal construction in the passive, ‘It is said that he was timid,’ whereas in Latin the personal construction is usual in the third person,¹ except in the compound tenses (i.e. the tenses made up of the participle and the verb ‘to be’).

It is reported that Ariovistus is near, Ariovistus adesse nuntiatur,

but

Nuntiatum erat Ariovistum adesse.

¹ When a dative is added to the principal verb, the impersonal construction is adopted.

Caesari nuntiatur adesse Ariovistum.

But *videri*, meaning 'to seem' or 'be seen (to be),'¹ always has the personal construction, whatever the tense or the person:

Visus est mihi scribere, *It seemed to me that he was writing, or, as if he were . . .*

111. Another point of difference between the English and the Latin idiom is this: in English far more commonly than in Latin the verb of saying or thinking is put in the parenthesis. So in dealing with such sentences as 'P. was a coward, they say' or 'The tribes are, it is said, inclined to revolt' you must paraphrase 'They declare P. to have been a coward,' 'The tribes are said to be inclined to revolt.'

112. Note that you cannot have a nominative with the infinitive except (1) with a passive verb of saying or thinking:

Dicatur esse sapiens, *He is said to be wise,*

or (2) with a verb of the class noticed in **103**.

Nolo ire solus, *I don't want to go alone.*

113. With regard to the tense of the infinitive depending on a verb of saying or thinking observe that the present infinitive represents action contemporaneous with (i.e. going on at the same time as) the action represented by the leading verb; and the perfect infinitive represents action prior to (i.e. completed before) the action represented by the leading verb.

¹ *videri* is used impersonally with the sense 'It seems good to me (to do it).' 'I resolve (to do it).'

Visum est mihi scribere, *I have determined to write.*

1. Dicunt eum urbem condere, *They say that he is founding a city.*
2. Dixerunt eum urbem condere, *They said that he was founding a city.*

In both these sentences the act of founding the city is represented as going on at the time when the statements represented by *dicunt* or *dixerunt* are made.

- | | | |
|--|---|----------------------------|
| (1) They declare | } | him to be founding a city. |
| (2) They declared | | |
| (1) They say, or (2) they said, 'Condit urbem, He is (now) founding a city.' | | |

Contrast with (1) and (2) sentences (3) and (4):

3. Dicunt eum urbem condidisse, *They say that he (has) founded a city.*
4. Dixerunt eum urbem condidisse, *They said that he (had) founded a city.*

In these the founding of the city is represented as having taken place at some time prior to that of the statements represented by *dicunt* and *dixerunt*:

- | | | |
|--|---|-----------------------------|
| (3) They declare | } | him to have founded a city. |
| (4) They declared | | |
| (3) They say, or (4) they said: 'Condidit urbem, He (has) founded a city.' | | |

114. THE FUTURE INFINITIVE

1. ACTIVE

(a) The future participle with or without *esse* :

Dixit illum venturum (esse), *He said the man would come.*

Dixit illos venturos (esse), *He said the men would come.*

Dixit illam venturam (esse), *He said she would come.*

The participle is an adjective agreeing with the subject of the infinitive.

(b) If there is no future participle use the impersonal *futurum esse* (or *fore*) *ut* (meaning that it is about to happen etc.).

Dixit fore (or *futurum esse*) *ut ille convalesceret,*
He said that the man would recover.

Dixit futurum esse (or *fore*) *ut illa convalesceret,*
He said she would recover.

Dixit futurum esse (or *fore*) *ut convalescerent, He*
said they would recover.

*Futurum*¹ is neuter accusative singular in all the above sentences.

(c) Even when the verb has a future participle the form *fore* or *futurum esse ut* is sometimes preferred :

Dixit futurum esse (or *fore*) *ut Caesar veniret,*
He said it was likely that Caesar would come

has nearly the same meaning as

Dixit Caesarem venturum esse, *He said that Caesar would come.*

¹ In the above sentences the *ut*-clause is the subject of *futurum esse*: 'he said that his (or her or their) recovery was about to take place.' Compare *accidit. Accidit ut rediremus*, It happened that we were returning, Our return happened. To avoid blunders you should translate *futurum esse* to yourself by an English impersonal verb, for instance 'He said it was likely to come to pass that she would recover.'

2. PASSIVE

(a) *Fore* (or *futurum esse*) *ut*.

Dixit futurum esse (or fore) ut Galli vincerentur,
He said the Gauls would be conquered.

(b) Supine with *iri*:

Dixit Gallos victum iri, *He said they would be conquered.*

(a) is commoner than (b). (a) has been explained on the previous page. (b) *Eunt victum Gallos* means 'they are moving with a view to conquering the Gauls.' Intransitive verbs are used impersonally in the passive (see 3): hence *itur victum Gallos* means 'a movement is being made with a view to conquering the Gauls.' *Iri* is the infinitive of *itur*: *Dixit iri victum Gallos* means 'he said that a movement was being made with a view to conquering the Gauls.'

Caution. *Victum* is the supine governing *Gallos*. Don't suppose that it is the participle and make it agree with *Gallos*.

EXERCISE 16

1. It is said that Demosthenes often heard Plato lecture.
2. They are, it is said, going to cross the river and march into our territory.
3. It seems to me that you are more foolish than before.
4. I am glad that you have arrived safe, and I am not surprised that you have come late.
5. I hoped to be made consul.
6. The praetor said that one of this man's slaves had entered into a conspiracy and had persuaded many slaves to take arms: he must be brought to him at once: such a person was a danger to the state: he would be crucified.
7. He was, according to tradition, the wisest of the Greeks.

1. I hear him lecture, *audio eum*.

4. safe, *salvus*.

6. It is quite usual to have a long string of infinitives depending on one verb. See 33-35 on *se* and *eum*.

7. tradition: use the verb *tradere*, to hand on, to pass on from one to another; being often used of passing on a story, this verb came to be treated just like a verb of saying:

tradunt eum fuisse regem, they hand down the story that he was king, tradition says that he was king.

traditur fuisse rex, he is said (by tradition) to have been king, he was king according to tradition.

8. The tradition is that Pythagoras came to Italy when Tarquinius Superbus was in the fourth year of his reign.
9. He pretended to be hungry so that we might give him something. We promised to send him some food.
10. Owing to the elegance of their style it was supposed that the plays of Terence were written by C. Laelius.
11. For it seems as if I were at Rome when I read your letters: it seems as if I saw you and heard your voice.
12. As to Balbus I will say nothing further than that he has always been an excellent citizen and friendly to me, but that he felt the same fears as the rest.
13. Day after day it was said that M. Crassus was hostile to me.
14. It seemed to me in a dream that I saw my mother coming to me to say that a divine voice had warned her that some trouble was impending.

8. reign: use the verb *regnare*.

10. Owing to the elegance of their style, *Propter elegantiam sermonis*.

12. As to, *de*.

I say nothing further than . . ., *nihil amplius dico nisi* . . .

I feel the same fears as Bibulus, *Eadem timeo quae Bibulus*; I tell you that I feel etc., *Dico me eadem timere quae Bibulum*. Note the case of *Bibulum*, attracted to agree with *me*. The sentence might also be turned *Dico me eadem timere quae Bibulus timeat*. Compare the note to Ex. 22. 1.

13. day after day: say 'every day.'

14. a divine voice, *divina quaedam vox*—if you say *divinam quamdam vocem se monuisse* the sentence will be awkward and might be misunderstood (for there is nothing to show whether *se* is the subject or object of the infinitive); so turn the sentence into the passive form and say 'that she had been warned by a divine voice.'

15. Messages kept coming to me every day to say that he was going to come across the river. At last on the seventh day news came that he had got frightened and had retired.
16. He began to complain that he a Roman citizen had been thrown into prison, that he had been condemned unheard: he would go to Rome and would accuse him.

15. 'Messages kept coming to say' may all be expressed by *nuntio*.

16. unheard, *indictā causā* (his cause not having been pleaded); *dicere causam* (to plead a cause).

XII

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

115. 1. There are two kinds of conditional sentence in which the subjunctive is used :

i. Those in which the present or perfect subjunctive is used ; these refer vaguely to future time, and may be expressed in English in accordance with the formula

If A *were to* happen, B *would* happen.

For example

Si id dicas, mentiaris, *If you were to say it (Suppose you were to say it, should you say it, if you said it), you would lie.*

Si id fecerim, virgis me caedat (or ceciderit), *If I did it, he would flog me.*

Contrast the more vivid future sentence in which the indicative is used :

Si id dices, mentieris, *If you say it, you will lie.*

Si id fecero, virgis me caedet, *If I do it, he will flog me.*

116. ii. Those in which the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are used; in these sentences it is implied that the condition is not fulfilled: the imperfect is used of present time, the pluperfect of past time:

Si id dixissem, mentitus essem, *If I had said that, I should have lied* (it is obviously implied that I did not say it).

Caederem te nisi irascerer, *I should flog you, if I were not getting angry* (it is obviously implied that I am getting angry).

Nisi ante Roma profectus esses, nunc eam certe relinqueres, *If you had not started from Rome already, you would certainly leave it now* (notice the change of tense).

117. 2. In conditional sentences which do not belong to either of the classes illustrated above, the mood is the indicative (unless, of course, the sense requires the imperative to express a command, or the subjunctive to express a wish). No special rules need be given; care must be taken to observe the general rules given in **53** with regard to the tenses. See also **54** and **55**.

The following sentences are examples of the most important differences of idiom between English and Latin:

He will come if he can, Veniet si poterit.

He will come if I bid him, Veniet si iussero.

He came if (ever) I told him to, Veniebat si iusseram.

118. It is sometimes difficult to distinguish between the vague future and the present unfulfilled, between

(a) *If he did it I should be angry*, *Si faciat, irascar*, and

(b) *If he were doing it, I should be angry*, *Si faceret, iracerer*.

What is the precise difference between (a) and (b)? (a) means 'let us suppose him to do it: I don't say he will do it or that he won't: but let us imagine that the thing occurs at any future time immediate or distant and see what the result would be': thus (a) leaves us in suspense. On the other hand (b) means 'let us suppose he were doing it: I know he isn't doing it, but if he were now doing it.'

119. 'If' . . . 'not' is generally expressed by *nisi*, 'unless'; *si non* is used if the *non* belongs to a particular word. Hence

Si non-veneris, ignoscam, means '*If you fail-to-come, I will forgive you.*'

Contrast

Nisi veneris, ignoscam, *I will forgive you unless you come*, *If you come I will not forgive you* (*nisi* negatives the principal sentence).

As a practical rule use *nisi* when 'unless,' 'except,' make sense, and *si non* when you can change the word with *non* into a positive form such as 'if you fail-to-do it.'

EXERCISE 17

1. If you had come to the camp you would have been seen by the soldiers. But you were not seen by them. Therefore you did not come to the camp.
2. To no purpose would nature have produced gold and silver, unless she had also taught us where it could be found.
3. If you do it I shall be very grateful: if you fail to do it I will forgive you.
4. If they found any beautiful statue, they gladly brought it to Verres.
5. But when shall I receive your letters? Who will bring them on to me? I should have waited for them at Brindisi, had I not been compelled to set sail: for the sailors were unwilling to let the good weather pass.
6. If he tries to use force, I hope you will not yield to him.
7. I would help your friend Rufus even if I had been injured by him. As, however, I gather from your letter that he was most anxious for my safety, I cannot help being his friend.

2. to no purpose, *frustra*. also: see 48.

5. bring . . . on, *per-fero*. Brindisi, *Brundisiūm*.

I let the good weather pass, *tempestatem praetermitto* (no adjective is necessary).

6. I use force, *vi ago*.

7. Begin *Rufum istum* (that R. you speak of).

gather, *intelligo*.

I am most anxious for your safety, *salus tua magnae mihi curae est*.

I cannot help being: say 'I cannot not be'; this repetition of *non* is not uncommon in Latin. (In English we say 'it is not un-

8. I should have been less cautious if I had not been warned by you.
9. If I had not borne a child, Rome would not now be attacked; if I had not a son, I should have died a free woman in a free country.
10. If you were to ask him what he thinks about the political situation, he would perhaps give you no answer.
11. It is not seemly that I should remember these acts of injustice: even if I could take vengeance for them, still I should prefer to forget them.

common,' but we do not say 'it is not not common.' We like the sense of a double negative, but not the sound of a double 'not.' In Latin the recurring *non* was not felt as unpleasing.)

8. less cautious, *incautior*.

9. bear a child, *pario* (3), perf. *pēpēri*.

10. What do you think? what are your views or opinions?
Quid sentis?

the political situation, *res publica* (the state of public affairs).

XIII

THE POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE

120. We have seen that the present and perfect subjunctive are used in conditional sentences of the vague future type :

Si id ex me quaeras nihil fortasse respondeam, *If you were to ask me that, I should perhaps give you no answer.*

The present and perfect subjunctive are used in much the same way without any if-clause :

Velim scire, *I should like to know* (βουλοίμην ἂν εἶδέναι).

Dixerit quispiam, *A man may say, will perhaps say* (εἴποι τις ἄν).

Quis putet ? *Who would, could, can suppose ?*

The English equivalents of this subjunctive are very various.

121. The imperfect subjunctive is used in the same way with reference to the past : the second person, meaning an imaginary 'you' ('one,' 'a man'), is especially common.

Maesti—crederes victos—in castra redierunt,
With dismal looks—you would have thought they were beaten—they returned to the camp.

122. If you look at the examples above you will see that the subjunctive is used to soften down an

assertion, to bring it forward modestly : compare the tone of

non credo, *I don't believe it*

with that of

vix crediderim, *I can scarcely believe it.*

The latter means, of course, like the former that the speaker does not believe what has been asserted, but the meaning is expressed in a somewhat softer form. Hence

velim, *I could wish, I should like,*

nolim, *I should not care to,*

malim, *I should prefer,*

are more common than the blunter expressions

volo, *I choose to, I wish to,*

nolo, *I won't,*

malo, *I want (to do this) rather (than that).*

If the verb depending on *velim* etc. has the same subject as *velim* it will be in the infinitive :

Hunc ego imitari nolim, *I should not like to imitate him.* [It is clear that *ego* is the subject to *imitari* as well as to *nolim*.]

If the verbs have different subjects, the depending verb will be in the subjunctive present ¹ :

Tu velim scribas or Tu scribas velim, *I wish you would write, I should like you to write, I would have you write, I hope you will write.* [It is clear that *ego* is the subject of *velim*, *tu* of *scribas*. Note that the pronoun *tu* is commonly, though not necessarily, expressed.]

¹ If the verbs have different subjects the depending verb is less often in the infinitive, its subject being expressed in the accusative :

Caedi discipulos minime velim, *I would by no means have the pupils flogged.*

123. *Vellem*, I could have wished, should have liked (but it is too late), *Mallem*, I should have preferred, are used if the wishes are no longer realisable. The depending verb is generally in the subjunctive (sometimes with *ut*: negative *ne*); in the imperfect tense in reference to the present; in the pluperfect in reference to the past:

Vellem viverent, I wish they were alive, Would that they were alive.

Quam vellem adesses, How I wish you were here.

Vellem ne scripsisses, I wish you had not written.

Note that in idiomatic English we often translate *velim* and *vellem* with a dependent subjunctive by 'I wish' or, more emphatic, 'I do wish': beware of translating this into Latin by the indicative.

EXERCISE 18

In doing this exercise you must introduce the potential subjunctive as far as possible. Do not, for example, use *possum* in 1 or *spero* in 4.

1. But you can never praise Plato too much or too often.
 2. I would have you think that no one was ever more dear to any one than you to me.
 3. This I would affirm without any hesitation that eloquence is the most difficult of accomplishments.
 4. I hope you will forgive me if I am not able to write so often.
 5. When the battle was finished, then of a truth you might have seen what a daring spirit there had been in Catiline's army.
 6. Would that Atticus could be here. Would that he had not gone away from us.
 7. I myself would not unwillingly go wrong in Plato's company.
 8. Perhaps some one may say, I do wish I were allowed to do the same.
 9. The letter which you sent the other day was very pleasing to Pompeius, as I can easily understand.
1. too much, *nimis valde*.
Use *nec . . . , nec . . .*
 3. affirm, *confirmo* (1).
Say 'that eloquence (*eloquentia*) is the most difficult accomplishment (use *res*) of all.'
 5. use *cerno* (3).
 7. in Plato's company: use the preposition *cum*.
go wrong, *erro* (1).
 9. the other day, *proxime*.
very pleasing, *pericundus*.
as (=a thing which), *quod*.

10. It would not have been easy to make out whether Hannibal was dearer to the commander or to the army.
11. Lastly—it may perhaps scarcely seem probable—I hated this man much worse than I hated Clodius himself.
12. How I wish we had our friend Panaetius with us.
13. Who would ever have thought that this great war could be finished in one year by one commander?
14. Where now could you find in a single individual this loftiness of mind which was at that time *a characteristic* of the whole people?

10. Say 'You could not easily have discerned' (*discerno*).

11. probable, *veri similis* (like the truth).

worse: *peius* is used with *odi*.

13. Say *hoc tantum bellum*.

14. a single individual, *unus*.

loftiness of mind, *altitudo animi*.

the whole people, *populus universus*.

XIV

124. COMMANDS

- (1) Audi, *Listen*.
- (2) Fac (ut) venias, *Bring it about that you come, Do come, Pray come, Be sure you come.*
- (3) Cura ut venias, *Take good care to come, Mind you come, Manage to come.*

Commands are expressed (1) by the imperative, (2) by *fac* (the imperative of *facio*) with (*ut* and) the subjunctive, (3) by *cura* (the imperative of *curo*, I take care) with *ut* and the subjunctive.

125. PROHIBITIONS

- (1) Noli putare, *Don't suppose (or, Please don't suppose).*
- (2) Cave ne eas, *Take care not to go, Mind you don't go.*
Cave putes, *Beware of thinking, Pray don't think.*
- (3) [This form is rare] Hoc ne feceris, *Do not do it (or, You are not to do it).*

(1) Prohibitions are generally expressed by *noli* or *nolite* (the imperative of *nolo*, I do not wish, I am unwilling) with the infinitive. *Noli* appeals to the person addressed not to want to do the action referred to: it is a polite form of speech, much like our 'Please don't do this.' It is an appeal rather than a command. Hence it is always used by an orator

addressing a jury or any body of men that he wishes to please: *nolite, iudices, isti credere*, Do not believe him, gentlemen of the jury.

(2) Prohibitions are also expressed by *cave* (imperative of *caveo*, I am careful, cautious) with (*ne* and) the subjunctive. *Cave* cautions the man addressed against doing the action referred to. This is a polite form of prohibition, because it suggests that in his own interests the man should avoid the act.

(3) *Ne* with the perfect subjunctive represents a peremptory, imperious order: it expresses in the strongest possible way the will of the speaker that the thing is not to be done: there is no appeal to the feelings of the person addressed, no attempt to be polite, no ceremony, but an order pure and simple. The tone is that of the English 'You are to do this, you are not to do that.' Hence this form of prohibition is appropriate in addressing an inferior whom one has the right to order about. Or it may be used in speaking to a friend (especially an intimate friend with whom there is no need of ceremony), but only if the speaker is rather excited and very eager to prevent his friend from doing something which he seems on the point of doing. Hence it is, of course, never used by an orator in speaking to a jury or a body of men which he wishes to please.

In poetry *ne* with the imperative is often used in prohibitions: *equo ne credite, Teuceri*, Trust not the horse, Trojans. It is perhaps worth noting that in colloquial English we do not use the simple imperative in prohibitions, though it is common enough in poetry.

EXHORTATIONS

126. In the first person plural and the third person singular and plural the present subjunctive supplies the place of the imperative :

Cedamus, *Let us yield.*

Suum quisque noscat ingenium, *Let each man know his own mental powers.*

127. *Ne* not *non* is the negative of all sentences used to express the will of the speaker (volitive sentences). Hence the use of *ne* in purpose clauses :

Ne quis putet, *Let no one suppose.*

Ne redeamus, *Let us not return.*

Contrast the potential subjunctive, *Quis non laudet ?*
Who would not praise ?

Ne may be followed by *ne-ve*, just as *non* is followed by *neque* :

Ne timeamus neve desperemus, *Let us not be afraid nor lose hope.*

128. The subjunctive is used in questions which expect an answer in the imperative. This is called the deliberative subjunctive :

Huic cedamus ? *Are we to yield to him ?* [*Do you bid us yield to him ?*]

This is a sentence of the same type as *Cedamus*, *Let us yield*, thrown into the form of a question.

WISHES

129. We saw in **126** that the subjunctive is used as a sort of imperative :

Eamus, *Let us go.*

Ne quis dubitet, *Let no one doubt.*

The tone is that of command or exhortation.

We pass on to a somewhat similar use of the subjunctive :

Stet haec urbs, *May this city continue to stand.*

Moriar, *May I die.*

These sentences are optative rather than imperative or hortative : the speaker expresses a wish that this or that may happen, he does not order or exhort any one to try to bring it about.

130. The subjunctive is often used in this way with *utinam*, *O that !*

(a) Fut. *Utinam* (ne) *veniat*, *O that he may (not) come ! If only he were (not) to come.*

(b) Pres. *Utinam* (ne) *adesset*, *O that (or, Would that) he were (not) here ! I wish he were (not) here.*

(c) Past. *Utinam* (ne) *venisset*, *O that he had (not) come ! Would that he had (not) come.*

Observe that in the above sentences, as in conditional sentences, the present subjunctive refers to the future and represents the wish or condition as still realisable ; the imperfect and pluperfect represent

the wish or condition as unrealisable, the imperfect referring to present, the pluperfect to past time.

(a) Fut. Si veniat, *If he were to come.*

(b) Pres. Si adesset, *If he were here.*

(c) Past. Si venisset, *If he had come.*

Instead of *utinam* the potential subjunctive *velim* or *vellem* may be used, as shown in **122–23**.

(a) Fut. Velim veniat, *I wish he would come.*

(b) Pres. Vellem adesset, *I wish he were here.*

(c) Past. Vellem venisset, *I wish he had come.*

EXERCISE 19

1. Go away quickly and hang yourself.
2. Nothing is more hateful than dishonour, nothing more loathsome than slavery: either let us hold to our freedom or let us die an honourable death.
3. Mind you keep well and send me a letter any time you have the chance, so that I may know what is going on in town.
4. Where am I to turn to avoid these troublesome people? I would go away into the country at once if I were not expecting you here.
5. Be sure you come and see me when I get back.
6. As to what your boy is doing don't trouble yourself: there is no reason why you should distrust his teacher.
7. O that I may see the day when I may thank you because you have compelled me to live: so far indeed I much regret it.
8. O that you were at Rome! You would have stayed if we had thought that this would happen. For if you were there we should

1. quickly, *cito*.

2. hateful, *detestabilis*. dishonour, *dēdēcus*, -ōris.
loathsome, *foedus*. hold to, *teneo*.

3. any time you have the chance: say 'as often as ever (*quotienscumque*) you have *any one* to whom you can give (*des*) a letter.' As to the subj. *des* see 157.

4. people, *homines* (a little contemptuous).

5. I come and see you, *venio ad te*.

6. distrust, *diffido* (3), dat.

7. the day, *ille dies*.

so far indeed, *adhuc quidem* (hitherto at any rate).

8. happen: use *sum*.

have no difficulty in holding our enemy in our power, or at any rate we should be able to get information as to what he was going to do.

9. Pull yourself together, and reflect who you are and what you have done.
10. It seemed to him in a dream that some god was saying to him: This thou shalt do, this thou shalt not do.
11. Pray do not suppose that any more welcome letter than yours has ever been read out in the senate.
12. Lastly, do not forget that you are Cicero.
13. May I die if I am not writing as I feel.
14. The gates are open, set off. Depart, and set the state free from fear.
15. "No lies mind: did he make a plot against me?"
"Yes, he did."
16. Pray don't suppose, because I write somewhat lightly, that I have thrown aside all my care for the state. Be sure of this, that day and night I care for nothing but the safety and liberty of my fellow-citizens.

say 'we should very easily hold in our power' (*teneo*).
at any rate, *certe*.

get information, *scio*.

9. I pull myself together, *me colligo* (I collect myself).
reflect, *considero* (1).

11. read out, *recito* (1).

12. lastly, *dēniquē*.

13. He is not speaking as he feels, *aliter loquitur ac sentit* (he speaks and feels differently).

16. somewhat lightly: use the comparative adverb from *iocosus* (= in a jesting mood). As to this use of the comparative see note p. 45.

Be sure of this, *Sic tibi persuade*.

'days and nights I care for nothing else but that (*nihil aliud curo nisi ut*) my fellow-citizens may be safe etc.'

XV

ORATIO OBLIQUA

131. The student is quite familiar with the constructions illustrated by the following sentences :

1. Tullia dixit se illum in carcerem coniecturam,
Tullia said that she would throw him into prison.
2. Imperavit (ut) ad urbem rediret, *She ordered him to return to the city.*
3. Quaesivit ex eo num epistulam amisisset, *She asked whether he had lost the letter.*

The first is an indirect statement; the second an indirect command; the third is an indirect question. Oratio obliqua (i.e. indirect, or reported speech) is the general term under which are included indirect questions, statements and commands. The term oratio obliqua is used especially of passages of reported speech which run to any length, but it is quite correct to apply it, as we have done above, to short indirect statements or questions or commands; and it is obviously convenient to do so. We see then, that the three first rules of oratio obliqua are

1. Statements are put in the accusative and infinitive.

2. Questions in the subjunctive.

3. Commands in the subjunctive: sometimes with, more commonly without, *ut*.

132. To these we must add

4. In subordinate clauses the verb is in the subjunctive. (This is, for you, the most important rule of all because it is the least familiar.) Subordinate clauses are introduced by such words as the relative pronoun, 'when,' 'where,' 'whence,' 'while,' 'if,' 'though,' 'because'; a subordinate clause taken by itself makes no sense: for example in the sentence 'Have you lost the letter, *which I gave you?*' the words in italics are the subordinate clause; by themselves they mean nothing.

133. We may illustrate rule 4 by adding subordinate clauses to the three sentences given above:

1. Dixit se illum, nisi epistulam reperisset, in carcerem coniecturam. (Original words: Nisi epistulam repereris [fut. perf.] in carcerem te coniciam.)
2. Imperavit ut ad urbem rediret unde venisset. (Original words: Ad urbem redi, unde venisti.)
3. Quaesivit num epistulam amisisset, quam illi dedisset. (Original words: Num epistulam amisisti, quam tibi dedi?)

134. We will now combine the three sentences into one continuous piece. By beginning with the question we shall get the best sense:

Tullia quaesivit num epistulam amisisset, quam illi dedisset. Ad urbem rediret unde venisset. Se illum nisi epistulam reperisset in carcerem coniecturam, *Tullia asked whether he had lost the letter she had given him. He must return to the city from which he had come. She would throw him into prison if he did not find the letter.*

Note that *imperavit* (and with it *ut*) and *dixit* will now be omitted: one verb *quaesivit* is sufficient to introduce the whole speech.

135. It may be useful to add as a corollary to the four rules given above, that **the indicative will not be used at all in oratio obliqua.** The only indicative in the passage above is *quaesivit*, and it introduces the oratio obliqua and does not form part of it.

The rules for the moods in oratio obliqua are now complete.¹

136. Oratio obliqua may follow any verb of saying, except *inquit*, (including, for example, to shout, to urge, to promise, to complain, etc. etc.,) or of thinking, knowing, feeling, etc., or any expression in which saying or thinking is implied; for example, *Suspicio est*, there is a suspicion. In short, whenever a writer

¹ With one unimportant exception. Rhetorical questions which in the oratio recta would be in the indicative and in the first or third person are expressed in the infinitive in oratio obliqua. A rhetorical question is really a statement put in a vivid form; no answer is expected: for example, *Quid est turpius quam iniussu imperatoris recedere?* What is more disgraceful than to retire without orders from the general? This becomes in oratio obliqua, *Quid esse turpius . . . ?* Contrast with this a real question to which an answer is expected: *Quid est factururus?* What is he likely to do? This becomes in oratio obliqua *Quid esset factururus?*

wants to put before us what was passing in the mind of another he will generally use oratio obliqua. Hence we find it on almost every page of Latin, and it is important to see clearly how Latin oratio obliqua differs from English reported thought or speech. Now the characteristic of Latin oratio obliqua is the use of the subjunctive and infinitive moods. In English, on the other hand, we have no subjunctive, and our use of the infinitive by no means corresponds to the Latin.

137. In changing from oratio recta to oratio obliqua in English we often have a change of tense, not often of mood: in Latin both the moods and tenses are liable to change, but the important change is the change of mood. Take a simple instance: in the following sentences the only change in the English, besides the obvious change of the pronouns, is a change of tense, 'will' to 'would,' 'orders' to 'ordered'; in the Latin we have a change of mood, *faciam* to *facturum* *esse, and of mood and tense, *iusserit* (fut. perf. ind.) to *iussisset* (plpf. subj.).

Oratio recta: *I will do what she orders, Ea quae iusserit faciam.*

Oratio obliqua: *He said (or thought) he would do what she ordered, Dixit se ea quae iussisset facturum esse.*

As the two languages are so different in this respect, the easiest way to turn a piece of English oratio obliqua into Latin is to put it first into oratio recta in English, turn that into Latin, and then change into oratio obliqua according to the rules.

138. The rules for the moods have been given in **131–32**. Rule 5 will deal with the tenses, Rule 6 with any other changes that may be necessary.

5. (i) When changing the indicative to the infinitive put the same¹ tense of the infinitive in the oratio obliqua as you have of the indicative in the oratio recta. Thus

scribo will become (*dixit*) *se scribere*,
scribam will become (*dixit*) *se scripturum*,
scripsi will become (*dixit*) *se scripsisse*.

(ii) When changing to the subjunctive follow the rule of sequence. (See Sect. 13.)

If the verb which introduces the oratio obliqua is in a historic tense—and in this book this is commonly the case—then by the rules of sequence the only possible tenses of the subjunctive are the historic tenses, the imperfect and pluperfect. Hence a present or future indicative, and any form of command or prohibition, in the oratio recta will become imperfect subjunctive in oratio obliqua; for example

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} si\ scribit \\ or \\ si\ scribet \end{array} \right\} \text{ will change to } \left\{ si\ scriberet. \right.$$

scribe, ‘write,’ will change to *scriberet*, ‘let him write, he must write.’

A perfect, future perfect, or pluperfect indicative in the oratio recta will become pluperfect subjunctive in oratio obliqua:

¹ In writing these rules I have aimed at clearness not at completeness: I have not, for instance, mentioned that *scribebam* would become *scripsisse*.

si scripsit
si scripserat
si scripserit

} will change to { *si scripsisset.*

A verb which is in the subjunctive in oratio recta will of course remain in the subjunctive in oratio obliqua. The tense will be subject to the rules of sequence. Hence *Mittam qui pacem petant*, I will send men to ask for peace, will become *Dixit se missurum qui pacem peterent*.

139. If you have fully understood what you have read you will be prepared for the statement that you can scarcely go wrong if you keep the three following cautions before your mind :

1. Don't use the indicative.

2. When you use the infinitive (and you know when to use it) put the same tense as you have in the oratio recta.

3. If a verb is not in the infinitive it must be in the subjunctive. The only possible tenses are the imperfect or pluperfect: work from the oratio recta by the rules of sequence.

140. 6. Besides the verbs some other words will be liable to change, but the English will generally guide you. Obviously the pronouns will in many instances require change as in English. For instance

(Ego) meum librum amisi.

Dixit se suum librum amisisse.

(Tu) librum amisisti.

Dixit illum amisisse librum.

If 'he' in the oratio obliqua stands for 'I' in the oratio recta the Latin will be *se*; *meus* and *noster* will

change to *suus*. Compare 33. If, on the other hand, 'he' stands for 'you' the Latin will be *illum: tuus* and *vester* will change to *illius, illorum*.

Observe that the subject of the infinitive must be expressed. *Ego* and *tu* may be omitted in the above sentences, but *se* and *illum* cannot be left out.

Such words as 'to-day,' 'to-morrow,' 'now,' 'here,' will obviously need change. 'I cannot come to-day' must be changed to 'He said he could not come on that day.' Here common sense will guide you.

141. Examples. I. Statements depending on a verb in a historic tense, arranged according to the tense of the subordinate clause:

Indicative. Present.

Qui docent discunt.

Intellegebat eos, qui *docerent*, discere, *He found that men learned by teaching.*

Servos, si necesse est, in crucem tollo.

Fatebatur se *servos, si necesse esset*, in crucem tollere, *He would own that he crucified his slaves, if ever it was necessary.*

142. Future.

Si conabor, opus brevi tempore conficiam.

Sperabam me opus, si *conarer*, brevi tempore confecturum (or, *Sperabam* fore ut opus, si *conarer*, brevi tempore conficerem), *I hoped I should soon finish the work if I tried.*

Si pugnabit, vincetur.

Putabamus eum, si *pugnaret*, victum iri (or,

Putabamus fore ut, si *pugnaret*, *vinceretur*),
We thought he would be beaten if he fought.

Note that *fore ut* is often used in preference to the other form of the future infinitive active, and that where the verb has no future participle *fore ut* must be used: for instance

Sperabam fore ut disceret.

Negaverunt fore ut convalesceret.

In the passive *fore ut* is found more commonly than the awkward combination of the supine with the impersonal *iri*.

143. Perfect.

Qui mihi insidias *paraverunt*, eos capitis damnavi.
Scripsit se eos, qui sibi insidias *paravissent*, capitis damnavisse, *He wrote (to tell me) that he had condemned to death the men who had made plots against him.*

144. Future Perfect.

Cum urbem *cepero*, faciam te certiozem.
Promisit se me, cum urbem *cepisset*, certiozem facturum, *He promised to send me information when he had taken the city.*

145. Pluperfect.

Qui flumen *transierant* ab hostibus interfecti sunt.
Imperatori renuntiavit eos, qui flumen *transissent*, ab hostibus esse interfectos, *He brought word to the commander that the men who had crossed the river had been killed.*

146. *Subjunctive. Present.*

Nihil interest mea utrum hodie an cras *abeas*, *It makes no difference to me whether you go to-day or to-morrow.*

Negavit sua quidquam interesse utrum ille illo die an postero *abiret* (*that day or the next*).

With regard to vague future conditional sentences, see 151.

147. *Perfect.*

Oblivisceris quantas tu in me iniurias *commiseris*.

Dixi illum oblivisci quantas ipse in me iniurias *commisisset*, *I said that he forgot how he himself had wronged me.*

148. *Imperfect and Pluperfect.*

Cum haec *confecissem* et iam *requiescerem* adiit Tullia, *When I had finished this and was just beginning to rest Tullia came to me.*

Cum ea *confecisset* et iam *requiesceret*, *adiisse* Tulliam dixit.

With regard to unfulfilled condition sentences, see 151.

149. II. Examples of commands :

Imperator Nondum est, inquit, tempus pugnae : castris vos *tenete* : *nolite perturbari* hostium clamoribus : ne quis a loco *discedat*, *The general said, "The time for fighting has not yet come : keep in the camp : don't be disturbed by the shouts of the enemy : let no one leave his place."*

Imperator respondit nondum esse pugnae;
castris se *tenerent*: *ne perturbarentur* hostium
clamoribus: ne quis a loco discederet.

Di immortales in Galliam te revocant: *redi*: *ne transieris Rubiconem*, *The immortals gods recall you to Gaul: go back: do not cross the Rubicon.*

Deos immortales in Galliam illum revocare: *rediret*:
ne transiret Rubiconem.

If you feel doubtful how to put an indirect command supply *impero* (or *hortor* or some verb of similar meaning), e.g. *imperavit ut se tenerent: imperavit ne perturbarentur etc.*

Observe that *ne feceris* or *noli facere* will be represented by *ne faceret*.

150. III. Questions:

Non intellego cur in meam domum veneris: quis
te *invitavit*? Quid *cupis*? Quando *exibis*?

Clamavit se non intellegere cur in suam domum
venisset: quis illum *invitasset*? Quid *cuperet*?
Quando *esset exiturus*?

In a question the future indicative is represented by the future participle with the proper form of the subjunctive of *sum*. Compare the use of the participle to form a future infinitive, *dixi eum exiturum esse*.

If you feel doubtful how to put an indirect question supply *quaero*. For instance *Quaesivit quis illum invitasset: quaesivit quid cuperet: quaesivit quando esset exiturus.*

151. 7. The rules given above as to the moods and tenses in oratio obliqua will apply to all sentences, except the two kinds of conditional sentence in which the subjunctive is used in oratio recta. These are (a) the vague future, (b) the unfulfilled condition :

- (a) Si *adsit* (or, *venerit*, perf. subj.) *certiores nos faciat* (or, *fecerit*, perf. subj.), *If he were to come, he would give us the information.*

This in oratio obliqua would be

Putabam eum, si *adesset* (or, *venisset*), *certiores nos facturum esse.*

In the principal clause *faciat* or *fecerit* will be changed into the future infinitive. In the 'if'-clause follow the rules of sequence, according to which *veniat* will become *veniret*, *venerit* will become *venisset*.

Note that the vague future in oratio obliqua is not distinguished from the vivid future.¹ *Si aderit* (fut.) or *venerit* (fut. perf.) *certiores nos faciet* (If he comes he will give us the information), would be represented by the same oratio obliqua as we have above :

Putabam eum si adesset (or, *venisset*) *certiores nos facturum esse.*

- (b) 1. Si *adesset*, *certiores nos faceret*, *If he were here he would be giving us the information (but he is not here).*
 2. Si *venisset*, *certiores nos fecisset*, *Had he come, he would have given us the information (but he has not come).*

¹ This is also the case in Greek so far as the 'if'-clause is concerned. *ei ἔλθοι* in oratio obliqua may represent *ἐὰν ἔλθοι* or *εἰ ἔλθοιμι*.

These will become in oratio obliqua

1. Putabam eum, si *adesset*, certiores nos *facturum fuisse*.
2. Putabam eum, si *venisset*, certiores nos *facturum fuisse*.

The 'if'-clause is not changed: *faceret* and *fecisset* both change to *facturum fuisse*.

Here are a few more examples: ¹

- (a) Si id dicas, mentiaris, *If you were to say that, you would tell a lie.*

Dixi illum, si id diceret, mentiturum esse, *I remarked that, if he said that, he would tell a lie.*

Si id fecerim, virgis me caedat, *If I were to do so, he would flog me.*

Cogitabam eum me, si id fecissem, virgis caesurum esse, *I reflected that, if I were to do so, he would flog me.*

- (b) Si id dixissem, mentitus essem, *If I had said so, I should have told a lie.*

Sensi me, si id dixissem, mentiturum fuisse, *I felt that if I had said so, I should have told a lie.*

Caederem te nisi irascerer, *I should flog you, if I were not feeling angry.*

Respondi me illum, nisi irascerer, caesurum fuisse, *I replied that I should flog him, if I were not feeling angry.*

¹ See also the examples in 23 (p. 20).

152. The student who has fully mastered the foregoing rules will do well to read this paragraph. We have confined ourselves hitherto to oratio obliqua introduced by a historic tense. Suppose the introducing verb be in a primary tense rule 5 will be modified: wherever by rule 5 we had the imperfect subjunctive we shall now have the present, and wherever we had the pluperfect we shall now have the perfect.

Thus

| | | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|-------------|-----------------------|
| <i>si scribit</i> | } | will become | <i>si scribat,</i> |
| <i>si scribet</i> | | | |
| <i>si scripsit</i> | } | " " | <i>si scripserit.</i> |
| <i>si scripserit</i> (fut. perf.) | | | |

This is, of course, what would be expected from the rule of sequence. There is one exception: the unfulfilled condition sentence retains the historic tense even after a verb in a primary tense. For instance

Scribit se, si exercitui prae-fuisset, urbem deleturum fuisse, *He writes that had he been in command of the troops he would have utterly destroyed the city.*

EXERCISE 20

Each sentence to be translated first in oratio recta, then in oratio obliqua. Study Sections 131 to 145.

1. He promised to give me all the books which his brother had left him. (Or. recta. I will give you all the books which my brother left me.)
2. Xerxes the king of the Persians promised to give a large reward to the man who discovered a new pleasure. (Or. recta. I will give etc. to that *man* who shall have discovered, etc.)
3. There was a strong suspicion that, if the Helvetii tried to leave their territory, they would march through the province.
4. They brought news that the men who were in the city were dying of hunger: they would give the city up to the enemy, unless we sent them help within three days.

Before you begin the exercise study the order of words in the examples given in 141 to 145. Note especially (1) that the subordinate clause often comes in between the accusative and the infinitive: for instance *Dixit se, si posset, venturum*, He said he would come if he could; (2) that the personal pronouns tend to come together: for instance *Dixit se mihi, si posset, subventurum*; (3) look at sentence 3: the Latin order will be 'that the Helvetii, if they tried . . ., would march.' The subject of the infinitive will be brought out of the subordinate clause. It is a general rule in Latin but not in English that the subject of the principal verb must not be placed in a subordinate clause: we say 'If the Helvetii try to do it, they will march through our province': the Romans say 'The Helvetii, if they try to do it, will march etc.' Again, 'When Caesar returned he was informed of the matter,' *Caesar, cum redisset, de ea re certior factus est*.

1. leave, *relinquo*.

2. discover, *invenio*.

4. the men who: say 'those who . . .' Translate in the same way 'a man who' in the next sentence. In this sentence you will have more than one infinitive depending on *nuntiaverunt*. You will often have a long series of infinitives depending on one verb of saying or thinking. Remember this in 7.

5. I saw that a slave war would be a great danger to a man who possessed so many slaves.
6. I thought that if we gave him money he would lead us to the road.
7. There was a rumour that Bibulus had driven back the Parthians who had advanced in the direction of (*ad*) Antioch: that nevertheless the chiefs who were loyal to us were in the greatest danger: that the king of the Persians would help the Parthians, if necessary. So, if we did not want to lose the whole province, we must make our way to Antioch without delay.
8. They saw that if they cut our army off from the ships they would win.
9. He replied that, if they did not bring the hostages they had promised, he would burn their towns *and* lay waste their fields: when he received the hostages he would arrange a peace.
10. When I saw it I told them that I thought it was the very thing I was looking for.

5. slave war, *servile bellum*. *servilis* is an adjective formed from *servus*, like *civilis* from *civis*.

possess: use *sum*.

7. it is necessary, *opus est*.

10. it is the very thing, *id ipsum est*.

EXERCISE 21

Translate into English and re-write in Latin in oratio recta.

1. Quaerentibus amicis cui relinqueret regnum respondit ei qui esset optimus.
2. Recte Graeci docebant ea non temptanda esse quae effici non possent.
3. Senatus imperavit ut quicumque Galliam provinciam teneret, Haeduos defenderet. (Or. recta. Quicumque tenebit, defendat, *Let him defend.*)
4. Socrates dicere solebat omnes in eo quod scirent satis esse eloquentes.
5. Respondit eas aedes esse relinquendas: cui enim tot et tales essent libri, ei incendium maximo fore dolori.
6. Videbat fore ut, si essent hostes pulsi, celeritate periculum effugerent.
7. Etiamsi omnes deos hominesque celare possemus, nihil tamen iniuste faciendum esse docuit.
8. Themistocles respondit gratius sibi illum esse facturum, si se oblivisci quae vellet docuisset.
9. Eum omnium laborum finem fore existimabant, si hostem Hiberno intercludere potuissent.
10. Etiamsi tempus ad bellum conficiendum deficeret, tamen utilissimum sibi fore arbitrabatur, si modo insulam adisset, et genus hominum perspexisset, portus cognovisset.
11. Praedixit dormienti fore ut ille, cum Karthaginem delevisset, consul absens deligeretur bellumque maximum conficeret.

EXERCISE 22

Each piece of oratio obliqua in the following sentences to be translated first in oratio recta. Study 131 to 151.

1. Ariovistus replied that he had come into Gaul before the Roman people: why had Caesar come into his territory?
2. All along the line the leaders were proclaiming that no one was to leave his place: the booty was theirs, and for them was reserved whatever the Romans left behind: so they must remember that everything depended on *their* winning the victory. (Or. recta. Let no one leave his place: yours is the booty, and for you is reserved, whatever the Romans shall have left: so remember, etc.)
3. He boasted that if he had tried he would easily have beaten me.

1. It is possible to go wrong in translating the word 'before' in this sentence. Compare the following: *De malis nostris tu prius audis quam ego*, You hear of our troubles before I do. Or. obl. *Dixi illum de malis nostris prius audire quam me* (or *quam ego audirem*). Observe that *me* is in the accusative case, the same case as *illum*, unless we express the verb in the *quam*-clause. Compare also: *dico cum eadem timuisse quae ceteros*. Compare the note to Ex. 16. 12.

2. The men are trying to leave their ranks in order to secure their share of the loot: the officers are trying to persuade them that the baggage etc. which the Romans have abandoned will be kept for them, but that they must remember that they have not beaten the Romans yet.

proclaim, *pronuntiāre* (*ne*).

so remember, *proinde existimate*. *Proinde* is used in exhortations.

3. boast, *gloriāri*. See 151.

4. He urged the soldiers to jump down into the water if they did not want to give up their colours to the enemy: *he declared* that he at any rate would do his duty to the state and their general. (Or. recta. Jump down into the water, soldiers, unless you want . . . : I at any rate will do . . .)
 5. I knew that if he had wanted to see me he would have summoned me to his presence.
 6. When Philip sent a letter to the Lacedaemonians threatening to prevent everything they might try to do, they inquired whether he would even prevent their dying. (Or. recta. (i) I will prevent everything which you try to do. (ii) Will you prevent us dying?)
 7. When my friend Atticus was *staying* with me a little while ago at my house at Cumae, a message was brought me from Marcus Varro to say that he had come from Rome on the previous evening, and that he would have come straight on to see us if he had not been tired after the journey.
4. give up the colours, *aquilam prodere*. The standard of the Roman legion in Caesar's time was a silver eagle.
at any rate, *certe*.
to do one's duty, *officium prae-stare*.
6. Or. recta (i) to prevent everything, *prohibere omnia*. (ii) I prevent your dying, *prohibeo vos mori* (acc. and infin. as with *veto, iubeo, patior*). O. obl. The order will be: The Lacedaemonians when P. threatened (abl. abs.) by letter (*per litteras munitari*) etc.
7. a little while ago, *nuper*.
at my house at Cumae, *in Cumāno*. Varro, *Varro, -ōnis*.
on the previous evening, *pridie vesperi* (on the previous day in the evening; so 'this evening' is *hodie vesperi*, 'yesterday evening,' *heri vesperi*).
straight on, *continuo*.
tired after the journey, *de via fessus*.

8. I begged him to stay where he was: *I said* that there did not seem to be *any* reason why he should leave his friends: if anything happened I would send him a letter at once. (Or. recta. Do stay where you are: there does not appear to me to be *any* reason etc.)

8. Do stay: see 124.

if anything happens, *si quid novi acciderit*.

Or. obl. Note that 'I said' is omitted after 'I begged.' A Latin writer slips very easily from an indirect petition or question to an indirect statement. The use of the accusative and infinitive shows that it is an indirect statement, and so the verb is unnecessary.

EXERCISE 23

Write the oratio recta first.

1. He went to Capua and there found the consuls and Pompeius, to whom he delivered Caesar's letter. When they had read it they replied: Caesar was to return to Gaul, to leave Ariminum, and dismiss his armies: if he did so, Pompeius would go to Spain. Meanwhile, till a guarantee was given that Caesar would do what he promised, the consuls and Pompeius would not interrupt their levies. (Or. recta. Let Caesar return . . ., let him leave . . ., let him dismiss . . .; if he does so, P. will go. . . . Meanwhile, till a guarantee be given that C. will do what he promises, the consuls and P. will not interrupt. . . .)

2. Ariovistus has crossed the Rhine and has taken up his position in the territory of our allies the Haedui: he is demanding the corn which they promised to give us and is holding their largest town under his cruel dominion. (Or. obliqua. A message was brought saying that A. had crossed etc.)

3. We must not delay longer: within a few days all our allies will revolt from us: we must not wait for the cavalry to arrive: all is over with the Haedui: Ariovistus is at hand: and the soldiers terrified by his

1. Or. recta. Let C. return: see 126. For 'return' use *revertor*, I turn back.

I give a guarantee, *fidem do*, followed by the same construction as *promitto*. For 'till' use *quoad* with fut. perf. in the or. recta. interrupt, *intermitto*.

2. their largest town: say 'the town which they have largest.'

3. and the soldiers terrified by his approach: begin with the relative, 'by whose approach the soldiers being terrified.' The verb will be in the infinitive, for *cuius=et eius*; the clause is not subordinate.

approach will not dare to fight unless we set out at once. (Or. obliqua. We thought it best to delay no longer: the allies would revolt etc.)

4. Do not look round: on, on, Hannibal: as to what happens behind thee take no heed. (Or. obliqua. The god warned Hannibal not to look round etc.)

5. He said that he had ten legions ready: moreover he had ascertained that Caesar was unpopular with the soldiers and that they could not be persuaded to follow him. *He urged* that troops should be levied throughout Italy, that Sulla should be sent to Sicily, that money should be given to Pompeius to carry on the war. (Or. recta. I have ten legions ready etc. . . . Let troops be levied. . . .)

6. Cicero said that Scipio would not have conquered Carthage so easily if Sicily had not helped him. Sicily had been the first to teach the Roman people how glorious a thing it was to rule over the nations.

4. on, on: use the verb *pergĕre*, to go on.

as to what you do I take no heed, *quid tu facias non laboro* (1). *Non laboro* means 'I don't trouble myself': it takes an indirect question in the sense 'I don't trouble to think.'

behind thee, *a tergo*.

5. Caesar is unpopular with the soldiers, *milites alieno sunt animo in Caesarem*.

throughout Italy, *totā Italiā*.

6. help: use the phrase *auxilio esse* with dative.

EXERCISE 24

Do each sentence first in oratio recta, then in oratio obliqua.

1. Clive will come quickly to our support: he will arrive at the fort within three days: in the meanwhile there is nothing to fear: there are supplies enough for two months, and in our strongly built fort we can keep back any number of the Indians. Our safety depends on our courage: let us not lose hope, but let us get everything ready for the defence of the fort. (Or. obliqua. He pretended that Clive would come . . .)

2. I cannot come, lest in my absence the whole province should revolt: accordingly, if any opportunity presents itself, force your way out of the camp, and come to me with all your forces. (Or. obliqua. Clive wrote to say that he could not . . .)

3. We who remain in the fort are in the greatest danger: as supplies are running short, and there is no hope of cutting our way through the enemy, we shall in a few days die either by the sword or by starvation. (Or. obliqua. It was reported that those who remained etc.)

1. Clive, *imperator*.

there is nothing to fear: see 157.

to keep the enemy back, *sustinēre hostes*.

any number: *quivis* means any one you please, *quantus-vis* as large as you please; so *quantas-vis copias Indorum*, any number of the Indians [however great you please to suppose them].

2. to force or cut one's way, *erumpere*.

3. by the sword or starvation, *fāmē aut ferro*.

4. The Kaffirs have sent messengers in all directions to let the neighbouring chiefs know how few there are of us and what a good opportunity presents itself to set their country free. (Or. obliqua. They informed us that the Kaffirs had sent . . .)

5. [They say to one another,] If we can cut off this little band of Englishmen from the rest of the army, the English will even gladly make peace in order to rescue their friends from their perilous position. (Or. obliqua. The Kaffirs thought that if they could cut off etc.)

6. You will be too late unless you arrive at the fort to-morrow. (Or. obliqua. The messenger said that we should be too late . . .)

7. What is to be done? If we set off to the assistance of our *comrades*, the enemy will march *down* to the sea and burn our ships; if they do so, it will soon be all over with us. (Or. obliqua. We felt doubtful what was to be done. *We thought* that if we set off . . .)

4. Kaffirs, *barbari*.

send in all directions, *in omnes partes dimitto*.

5. even gladly, *vel laetus* (adjective).

I rescue them from a perilous position, *ex periculo eos eripio* (3).

6. you will be too late, *sero facietis*.

EXERCISE 25

To be done first in oratio recta, then in oratio obliqua.

I have a communication to make to the officer in command. I am a friend of the English people through whose kindness I have recovered the kingdom of my ancestors. At present, however, it is necessary to conceal my friendly feeling and to simulate hatred if I want to help you. As to the attack made on your camp by my men, I was compelled to make it, in order that the rest of the Indians might have no doubt as to my loyalty: now that their suspicions have been removed I have got information as to their plans: so I have come both to ask forgiveness and to warn you that all the Indians have made a conspiracy: on an appointed day they are going to attack all your forts, so that one regiment may not be able to come to the aid of another. Therefore I warn, *nam* I beg you to provide for the safety of your men. If you want to get away in safety, you must start before the forces of the Indians have come together. At present it is easy *for me* to lead even a force encumbered with

I have a communication to make: say 'I have what (pl.) I would like to say.'

recover, *recupero* (1).

to help you: use *auxilio sum* with dative.

As to the attack: see 162.

suspicious: use the singular.

so that one regiment . . . : say 'lest any regiment be able to come to the aid of another' (*alteri*).

in safety: use the adj. *incolumis*.

a force encumbered with baggage, *impeditos milites*.

baggage through my territory, from which it is not a long march to Fort William. This one promise I can make, *namely* that I will to-morrow conduct you safely through my territory. On the other hand, if you linger till the whole of Bengal is in revolt, I shall not be able to help you. I beg you to tell no one that I have been in the English camp. (Or. obliqua. The Rajah said that he had a communication to make etc. He was a friend . . .)

Fort William, *castra imperatoris*.
to conduct safely, *tutum iter dāre*.
On the other hand, *Contra*.
Bengal : say *provincia*.

EXERCISE 26

Each passage to be done first in oratio recta, then in oratio obliqua.

1. What is to be done? If the Rajah spoke the truth, I ought to act promptly. I must this very night make every preparation for departure. Nevertheless I must not act rashly, and I ought not to leave the camp without orders from the general. Any number of the natives can be held in check. I not only withstood the first attack, but even drove back a host of the barbarians with great slaughter. I have supplies enough for twenty days: in the meanwhile support will come from the nearest forts and from the general. (Or. obliqua. He felt doubtful what to do. If the Rajah had spoken the truth, he ought to act etc.)

2. Plots are being made against the Sultan Farfonilla by his enemies: the Englishmen who live in the district in pursuit of trade are in the greatest danger. (There was a rumour that plots were being made etc.)

3. Set sail for the city as speedily as possible with three cruisers. (I was ordered to set sail etc.)

4. The Sultan has already been poisoned: his kingdom has been seized by his uncle Dūrōba: the Englishmen will be murdered unless you are willing to protect them. (Men came to report to me that the Sultan had already been poisoned etc.)

1. any number (you please), *quantae-vis copiae*.

natives, *Indi*.

support, *subsidium* (pl.).

5. If you do not surrender to me at once, I shall bombard your city: if I do so, I shall punish you and your friends. If, however, you come to me at once, I will grant you your life. (I wrote to say that if he did not surrender . . . I should bombard etc.)

6. The Sultan committed suicide: I tried to persuade him not to do so, but was not successful. Now that the Sultan is dead, I have been made Sultan by the citizens in accordance with ancestral custom, and I will not yield to you. If you choose to fight, I am ready to defend the city. (He pretended that the Sultan had committed suicide: that he had tried to . . . he would not yield to me. If I chose to fight he was ready . . .)

6. I am not successful, *nihil efficio*.

XVI

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN RELATIVE CLAUSES

153. The subjunctive is, of course, used in a relative clause, when it would be used in a simple sentence :

Simple. Haec dicere velim, *I should like to say this.*

Relative. Haec habeo, quae dicere velim.

154. The subjunctive is used, as we have seen, in a relative clause which forms part of a reported speech or thought (*oratio obliqua*) :

O.R. Libros quos frater meus reliquit tibi dabo.

(a) O.O. Dixit se libros quos frater suus reliquisset mihi daturum.

155. It is not necessary that there should be any verb of saying or thinking (such as *dixit* in the sentence above) to introduce the speech or thought of another : for example

(b) Paetus omnes libros quos frater suus reliquisset mihi donavit, means *Paetus made me a present of all the books which his brother (so he told me) had left him.*

Here the use of the subjunctive (*reliquisset*) and of the reflexive pronoun show that the relative clause is oblique ; i.e. they show that in this clause the writer (Cicero) is reporting what Paetus had said to him.

In another letter Cicero writes

(c) Paetus mihi libros eos, quos Ser. Claudius reliquit, donavit.

This means, of course, Paetus has given me the books which Claudius left him.

Here he is not reporting what Paetus had said to him: he makes the statement that Claudius had left the books to Paetus directly, not obliquely.

This use of the subjunctive is very convenient: such parentheses as 'so he told me,' 'as alleged,' 'as he said' are often unnecessary in Latin, because the mood shows that the writer is reporting.

156. The subjunctive is used, as we have seen in 8, in relative sentences which express a purpose. Here *qui* = *ut is*. This is especially common after verbs of coming, sending, giving and choosing:

Venerunt qui nuntiarent, *Men came to report.*

Missus sum qui dicerem, *I was sent to say.*

Litteras ad eum scripsi quibus monerem, *I sent him a letter to warn him.*

Delegisti quos Romae relinqueres, *You picked out men to leave at Rome.*

157. The subjunctive is used in relative sentences which express a tendency or a result, just as it is used in consecutive sentences after *ut*. Here again *qui* = *ut is* or *talis ut is*

Nemo tam sapiens est qui sciat omnia, *No one is so wise as to know everything.*

Note the force of the subjunctive in the following ; it is rendered in many different ways in English :

Sunt qui putent *or* Nonnulli sunt qui putent *or*
Non desunt qui putent, *There are some who*
think (There are some of a sort to think, such
as think).

Nemo est qui me doceat, *There is no one to teach me.*
Nemo est unde discam, *There is no one from whom*
I can learn.

Habeo quod dicam, *I have something to say.*

Nihil est quod dicas, *There is nothing for you to*
say.

Quid causae est cur doleas ? *What is the reason for*
your sorrow ?

Nihil est (*or* Nulla causa est) cur doleas, *There is*
no reason why you should grieve.

158. The relative is used in the same way after *dignus*, worthy, *idoneus*, suitable, *aptus*, fitted, *is* (= the sort of man to), *talis*, *tantus*, *unus*, *solus*.

Dignus est quem imiteris, *He is worth imitating*
(worthy that you should imitate him).

Unus est qui nobis subveniat, *He is the one man to*
help us (or, who can help us).

Non sum ego is qui te decipiam, *I am not the (sort*
of) man to deceive you.

Non tu is es unde pecuniam exspectem, *You are*
not the man from whom I should expect (to get)
money.

EXERCISE 27

Ut is not to be used in this exercise. The relative pronoun *qui* or one of the relative adverbs, such as *unde*, *cur*, to be used in each sentence. The relative will take the subjunctive in sentences of the type shown in 153-58; the exercise also contains sentences in which the relative is used with the indicative.

1. What state is so strong that it cannot be overthrown?
2. No one seems to me better fitted to write about the war.
3. What is the reason why you weep? Do not ask me, lest I cause you to weep also.
4. They sent envoys to Rome to ask help from the senate.
5. Virtue bids us love those who are unfriendly to us.
6. The earth never gives back without interest what it receives.
7. The man who knows how to obey is also worthy to command.
8. This is what I had to say about old age.
9. There is no reason why you should ask him to dinner.
10. You are robbing Peter to pay Paul.
11. No one is so foolish as to deny it.
12. You are not the sort of person to know what is going on.
13. You considered Crassus a suitable person to send.
 1. to overthrow, *evertĕre*. 2. better fitted, *aptior*.
 3. I cause you to weep also: say 'I bring you to that same weeping,' *in eundem fletum te adduco*.
 6. interest, *usura*. 7. I know how to . . . : see 103.
 9. I ask him to dinner, *invito* (1) *eum ad cenam*.
 10. Say 'You are stealing from Peter what you may give to Paul.' For 'steal' use *eripio* (*rapio*, I snatch) with dative of the person. *Petrus, Paulus*.
 13. consider, *iudicare*.

14. There is nothing for you to be afraid of.
15. Who is there from whom we can expect aid ?
16. What he said to me he will also say to you.
17. Now he has something to promise.
18. He is the only man we can trust.
19. I received a letter from him yesterday: he had not much to tell: he was sending me some statues which his sister had bought. Please send a man to pay for the carriage.
20. I have absolutely nothing to write: for I have no orders to give (for you have neglected nothing), and nothing to tell you (for there is no news), and it is not an occasion for jesting: I have so many anxieties. This much, however, you should know, that I am going to start on March 14. Therefore let your letters follow me, so that I may hear not only all that really happens but also all the rumours. I shall receive them at Brindisi: for there I intend to wait for the commander-in-chief. If he tells me anything that you would wish to hear, I will write.

19. for the carriage, *pro vectura* (*veho* = I carry in a boat or cart).

20. I have absolutely nothing: say 'there is absolutely nothing,' *plane de-est*. Connect the sentences which follow with *nec*: 'neither have I any orders to give . . ., nor anything to relate . . ., nor is it an occasion for jesting (*locus iocandī*).'

to give orders (i.e. to tell a friend or a servant to do this or that for you), *mandāre*.

to neglect, *praetermitto* (= pass over, leave undone).

anxieties: say 'so many things make me anxious,' *sollicitare*, to make anxious.

This much, *tantum*.

you should know: use the imperative of *scio*, which is not *sci* but *scito*. March 14: see 163 ff.

what really happens, *res* contrasted with *rumores*.

XVII

CAUSAL SENTENCES

159. *Cum* takes the subjunctive :

Quae cum ita sint, *Since this is the case, This being so.*

Quod, *quia*, *quoniam* take the indicative.

Quod and *quia* are, of course, connected with *qui* : indeed, *quod* is the acc. neut. singular. You may see how they got the sense of 'because' from such a sentence as this :

Expulsus est propterea (*on account of this*) quod
(*namely that*) filium defendit, or, ob eam causam
(*for this reason*) quod (*that*) etc.

Such expressions as *propterea*, *ob eam causam*, *idcirco*, are often used with *quod* and *quia* ; in these expressions *-ea*, *eam*, *id-* are the antecedents of the relative.

Quoniam iam nox est, in vestra tecta discedite, *As it is now dark (or, Now that it is dark), depart to your homes.*

Quoniam was originally *Cum iam*, 'Since now.' In classical Latin it is not used as a temporal conjunction, but still there is something of its temporal meaning left in it ; the best translation is often 'now that.' It is very often used with *iam* as in the example.

160. *Quod, quia, quoniam* take the subjunctive in oratio obliqua.

This is, of course, what you would expect, as all subordinate clauses of oratio obliqua have subjunctive:

Monuit eos ut ab urbe discederent quod hostis adesset, *He warned them to leave the city because the enemy were near.*

Here the *quod*-clause is part of the warning. Compare

Quod hostis aderat monuit eos etc., *As the enemy were near he warned them etc.*

Here the *quod*-clause is not part of the warning, but the cause which made him issue the warning.

161. The verb of saying or thinking may be implied, the subjunctive of the causal sentence alone showing that the writer does not give the reason as his own, but is telling us what some one else thought or said:

Expulsus est patria Aristides, quod praeter modum iustus esset, *Aristides was banished because, as people felt, he was too just, or, on the ground that he was too just [praeter modum, beyond the proper limit for a human being].*

Note how convenient this use of the subjunctive is in Latin to distinguish what a writer says on his own responsibility from what he is putting into the mouth of one of his characters. In English we sometimes have to add 'as he said' or some such words. Compare **155.**

Hence the subjunctive in the following:

Socrates accusatus est quod corrumperet iuventutem, *Socrates was accused of corrupting youth (because, as they said, he corrupted).*

Queritur quod fecerim, *He complains that I have done it (because, as he says, I have done it).*

Dolebat quod fecissem, *He was grieved to think I had done it.*

162. QUOD MEANING "AS TO THE FACT THAT"

Quod is often used at the beginning of a sentence, where we might say 'As to the fact that,' 'With reference to what . . .,' and the like:

1. Quod scribis de Pompeio, nulla causa est cur timeas, *As to what you say in your letter about Pompeius, there is no reason why you should feel frightened.*
2. Quod hominem condemnavi, recte feci, *As to the fact that I condemned the fellow, I was right in doing so.*

It is often convenient to use a substantive to translate the verb following *quod*; in (1) we might say 'As to your remark,' in (2) 'With reference to the sentence I passed.'

Of course in oratio obliqua the *quod*-clause, like other relative clauses, will have the verb in the subjunctive: for instance

- (2) Quod hominem condemnasset, recte se fecisse.

EXERCISE 28

Use *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam* when possible. Do not use *cum* for 'because' or 'since,' though it would make good sense in some of the sentences.

1. He was condemned because he had retired without Caesar's orders.
2. Caesar ordered him to be put to death on the ground that he had retired without his orders.
3. He told me you were *staying* in bed because you had an attack of gout.
4. Now that I have spoken about the war I will say a few *words* about my own affairs.
5. Because he was not able to pay this sum of money he was thrown into prison.
6. I did it for the simple reason that you told me to do it.
7. Now that you are getting over your illness, I hope that if you are careful you will soon be stronger.
8. The soldier rejoices to think that he has beaten the enemy.
9. Themistocles used to walk about at night because, *as he said*, he could get no sleep.
10. Scaurus was accused of having received money from King Mithridates for a treasonable purpose.

2. on the ground that = 'because, as Caesar said,' . . .

3. I have an attack of gout, *ex pedibus laboro* (1).

4. speak, *dico*.

6. for the simple reason, *ob eam unam causam*.

7. get over = 'recover.'

I am careful, *diligentiam adhibeo*.

9. to get sleep, *somnum capere*.

10. for a treasonable purpose: say 'for (*ob*) betraying the state.'

11. Asto my having attacked the camp without the order of my superior officer, I did so because I thought that, unless our allies saw at once that we were not terrified by the capture of our ships, they would all revolt and join the Germans. (To be done also in oratio obliqua: 'As to his having attacked . . . he said he had done so . . .')
12. While Caesar was staying in these parts to repair his ships, the envoys of the Morini came to him to beg his forgiveness, on the ground that they had been compelled by their neighbours to make war on the Roman people, and to promise to do what he ordered.
13. Caesar complained that after petitioning him for peace they had made an attack without any provocation, but said that he was willing to forgive them if they gave him twenty hostages. As to their assertion that they had been compelled to make war he was surprised that they dared to say this: he had been informed that they had tried to persuade the Nervii to join the conspiracy, but the Nervii had refused to do so.
14. He thanked me for sparing him.

11. superior officer: either *imperator* (the chief) or *legatus* (the officer appointed by him as his deputy).

12. Do the oratio recta first. 'We ask forgiveness because we were compelled . . . We promise to do what you order.'

stay: use *moror* (1). in these parts, *in his locis*.

to make war on, *bellum facere* with dative.

13. Do the oratio recta first. 'After petitioning for peace you . . ., but I am willing to forgive you if you give me . . . As to your assertion . . . I am surprised that you dare . . . I have been informed that you tried . . .'

after petitioning: say 'when they had asked for peace.'

I make an attack without provocation, *bellum sine causa infero*.

refuse: use *nolo*.

XVIII

THE CALENDAR

163. The names of the months are

| | | | |
|------------|---------|-----------|----------|
| Januārius | Aprīlis | Quintīlis | October |
| Februārius | Maius | Sextīlis | November |
| Martius | Junius | September | December |

These words are generally used as adjectives: *mensis Januarius* is the Latin for January: sometimes *mensis* is omitted. They are declined like *bonus*, *tristis* or *celeber*:

mense Maio, *in May*,

mense Sextili, *in August*,

mense Novembri, *in November*.

The name Quintilis was altered to Julius and Sextilis to Augustus, in honour of the two first emperors.

164. The Roman does not number the days of the month as we do. Three days in the month have names: *Kālendae* (-arum), *Nōnae* (-arum), *Īdus* (*Iduum*), all feminine. The Calends are the first of the month, the Nones the fifth, the Ides the thirteenth: but in March, May, July, October¹ the Nones and Ides are two days later, i.e. the seventh and fifteenth. Hence

On Jan. 1, Kalendis Januariis.

On Jan. 5, Nonis Januariis.

On Jan. 13, Idibus Januariis.

On March 1, Kalendis Martiis.

On March 7, Nonis Martiis.

On March 15, Idibus Martiis.

¹ Remember these four by some word made out of their initial letters, e.g. Ma-Ma-Jul-Oc.

165. The other days of the month are described as so many days *before* the Calends, or the Nones, or the Ides, e.g.

Dec. 31, *pridie Kalendas Januarias* (*the day before the Calends of January*),

Jan. 4, *pridie Nonas Januarias*,

Jan. 12, *pridie Idus Januarias*,

Dec. 30, *ante diem tertium Kalendas Januarias* (*the third day before the Calends*),

Dec. 29, *ante diem quartum Kalendas Januarias*,

Dec. 28, *ante diem quintum Kalendas Januarias*,

and so we may go on, counting back till we reach the day after the Ides, namely

Dec. 14, *ante diem undevicesimum Kalendas Januarias*.

Again, March 14, *pridie Idus Martias*.

March 13, *ante diem tertium Idus Martias*.

March 12, *ante diem quartum Idus Martias*.

March 6, *pridie Nonas Martias*.

March 5, *ante diem tertium Nonas Martias*.

You will observe that Dec. 30, for instance, is not in the Roman way of reckoning called the second day before the first of January, but the third; the fifth of March is the third not the second before the seventh; that is to say, the Roman reckons inclusively, counting in the Calends, or Nones, or Ides.

166. Hence we may make the following rules for translating an English date into Latin :

1. If the day falls between the Calends and Nones, add one to the date of the Nones (to allow for the Roman inclusive method) and then subtract the given

number. For example, Sept. 2. The Nones of September fall on the 5th: $5 + 1 = 6$: $6 - 2 = 4$. Sept. 2, then, is the fourth day before the Nones, *ante diem quartum Nonas Septembres*, or written shortly *a.d. iv Non. Sept.*

2. If the day falls between the Nones and the Ides, add one to the date of the Ides, and then subtract the given number: e.g. Oct. 10. The Ides are the 15th. $15 + 1 - 10 = 6$: hence *a.d. vi Id. Oct.*

3. The Roman months have the same number of days as the English:

Thirty days have September,
April, June, and November.

If the day falls after the Ides, add two to the number of days in the month (one to allow for the Roman method of reckoning and one to represent the first of the following month) and subtract the given number, e.g. June 20: $30 + 2 - 20 = 12$: *ante diem duodecimum Kalendas Quintiles*.

Oct. 20: $31 + 2 - 20 = 13$: *a.d. xiii Kal. Nov.*

167. The expression *ante diem* is treated as an indeclinable substantive and may have a preposition in front of it:

*nuntii nobis tristes venerant ex ante diem iii Non.
Jun. usque ad prid. Kal. Sept., From June 3
right on to Aug. 31 we had had bad news.*

In order to get accustomed to the Roman Calendar you should give the date in Latin at the head of every exercise you write.

EXERCISE 29

1. On Feb. 1st, Feb. 7th, April 15th, July 15th, Sept. 20th, Nov. 30th.
2. From June 2nd to June 6th I shall be at Paris.
On June 13th I shall set off for Italy.
3. The letter which you wrote on April 28th was delivered to me on May 9th.
4. It is reported that there was a battle on Sept. 30th. As yet we do not know which won. I write this on Oct. 2nd. When I know for certain I will write to you.
5. We shall reach Athens on June 14. I hope that we have an excellent ship. Good-bye. I wrote this as soon as I embarked. June 7th, Brindisi.
6. There are to be games at Antium from May 2nd to May 4th. My daughter wants to see them. I shall be here till May 7th.
7. I reached Ephesus on Aug. 19th. There I have been waiting for Pomptinus these four days, and I have received no letter from him yet.

4. There was a battle : use the impersonal passive of *pugno* : see 3.

5. excellent, *valdē bonus*.

6. games, *ludi*.

to see, *spectare*.

168. HINTS ON THE CONNECTION OF SENTENCES

1. Quo cum venisset, And when he arrived there,
 or, Now when he arrived there,
 or, When he arrived there.

2. Cum autem puer flumen transiret

And }
 Now } when the boy was crossing the river,
 But }

In continuing a story after a stop we often use the word 'and' or the word 'now.' The word 'now' when used in this way is obviously not equivalent to 'at this time' and cannot be rendered by 'nunc.' In Latin the connection between one sentence and another will very often be made by the use of the relative pronoun or its adverb *quo*, or by the use of *autem*. As to this use of the relative see 31, 32, where many examples are given.

3. and they could not return nec redire poterant
 and no one doubted nec quisquam dubitavit
 and there is no hope neque ulla spes est
 and we never saw him neque unquam vidimus

'and' followed by a negative is generally rendered in Latin by *nec* or *neque*: *neque* should be used before vowels.

4. We often begin a sentence with 'Accordingly,' 'And so' or simply 'So' (=Consequently). The corresponding Latin will often be *itaque* (=And in this way), or *igitur* (=therefore): *itaque* stands first, *igitur* comes after the first word of the sentence.

Nemo ausus est Phocionem liber sepelire; itaque a servis sepultus est, *No free man dared to bury Phocion, and so he was buried by slaves.*

[*We received such and such news,*] and so we set off at once, Statim igitur profecti sumus.

EXERCISE 30 A

A prophecy

1. The city of Veii cannot be taken till the Alban lake overflows. Then let us wait for the water to flow down.

2. The immortal gods warned me that the city could not be taken till the lake overflowed.

3. If the waters of the lake burst out and take their own course to the sea, that will be a danger to the Roman people; if, on the other hand, the water is carried off in such a way that it cannot reach the sea, that will be your salvation.

4. Did he dare to say to the senate all that he had heard?

5. What did the gods foretell?

Veii: proper names are not given in the dictionary if the declension is obvious: *Vēii* is of course a plural noun of the second declension. *Veientes*, the people of Veii, is obviously of the third declension. Though *Veii* is plural the verb will be singular agreeing with *urbs*. Compare *Veii capti sunt*, *Urbs Veii capta est*, *Oppidum Veii captum est*.

1. till: see 64. the Alban lake, *lacus Albānus*.

to overflow, *redundāre*.

to flow down, *de-fluēre*.

3. Say 'if the lake bursts out (passive of *e-mitto*) and flows in its own course (*cursu suo pro-fluēre*) etc.' What tense should be used in this clause? See 53.

it will be a danger: use the dative. Compare *id tibi honori est*, that is an honour to you.

'if on the other hand (*sin autem*) it (i.e. *lacus* understood from the preceding sentence) is so (*ita*) carried off (use *e-ducēre*) etc.'

6. Rome will very soon be taken by the Gauls.

7. What has been foretold does not always come true, does it?

8. Is there any one who does not believe that the water of the Alban lake was carried along an aqueduct to Rome?

7. What, plural.

to come true, *e-venire*.

For questions, see 5.

8. Is there any one who does not: see 11.

to carry the water of the Alban lake along an aqueduct, *aquas Albanas deducere*.

EXERCISE 30 B

When the Alban lake had grown beyond its usual size, there came to us a deserter from the Veientes and said that he had been warned by the immortal gods that Veii could not be taken till the lake overflowed: and that if the waters of the lake burst out and took their own course to the sea, that would be a danger to the Roman people: if however the water were carried off in such a way that it could not reach the sea, that would be our salvation. And when the senate heard this, it ordered that the waters of the Alban lake should be carried along an aqueduct to Rome.

Now when the Veientes being weary of the war sent envoys to Rome to arrange a peace, one of them, it is said, declared that the deserter had not dared to say everything that he had heard to the senate: for the gods had foretold to him that Rome would soon be taken by the Gauls. And who is there who has

See the notes to 30 A.

to grow beyond its usual size, *crescere praeter modum* (beyond its limit).

From 'said that' . . . to 'salvation' we have *oratio obliqua*. See 131 ff.

Now when: see 168.

weary of the war: say 'tired by the war.'

to arrange: see 156.

one of them, *ex his quidam*.

one of them, it is said, declared: say 'one of them is said to have said'; see 110, 111. The *oratio obliqua* runs on to the word 'Gauls.'

And who is there etc.: 'which prediction¹ indeed (*quod quidem*) to have come true . . . who is there who has not heard?'

¹ A word printed in italics in the exercise or notes should not be translated.

not heard that this prediction came true in the sixth year after the capture of Veii? Not long before the capture of the city a voice was heard coming from the temple of Vesta "Repair your gates: if they are not repaired, Rome will be taken."

the capture of Veii: see 77.

I hear a voice *coming* from a temple, *exaudio vocem a templo*.

EXERCISE 31

An urgent letter

When he learned what had happened, he sent for some of his Indian horsemen whom he knew to be loyal, and persuaded them by the promise of great rewards to carry a letter to the commander-in-chief. This he had written in Latin, lest if the letter were intercepted our plans might get known by the Indians. He begged the commander to come to his aid at once: large forces of the Indians had crossed the Ganges and were marching towards his camp. They could easily be cut off in the mountain-passes and prevented from getting supplies if he arrived within three days. On the other hand if they reached the plains our forces would not be sufficient to beat such a vast host. If he did not come, he and his men would be placed in a very dangerous position. They had scarcely supplies enough to last a month, and the camp could not easily be defended.

what had happened, *res*.

he sent for . . . : say 'he ordered certain *men* of (*ex*) his Indian horsemen to be summoned to him, and having set before them (*propono*) great rewards . . .'

if the letter were intercepted: use participle.

Oratio recta: 'large forces of the Indians have crossed the Ganges and are marching to my camp; they can easily be cut off and prevented from getting supplies if you arrive before the fourth day. On the other hand, if they descend from the mountains there will not be enough of our soldiers for beating so great a host. If you do not come, I and my men will be placed in a very dangerous position. We have scarcely supplies enough to last a month, and the camp cannot easily be defended.'

to prevent from getting supplies, *frumento prohibere*.

On the other hand, *Contra*.

to be placed in a very dangerous position: say 'to come into very great danger.'

We have scarcely . . . : *Nobis frumenti est vix in mensem quod satis sit*, Of corn we have what scarcely for a month would be enough.

EXERCISE 32

Ariovistus

1. While we were talking thus to one another, a message was brought, *saying* that Ariovistus had crossed the river Rhine with nearly all his forces and had taken up his position in the territory of our allies the Haedui; he was, *it was said*, demanding the corn which they had promised to give us, and was holding the largest town they had under his cruel dominion.

2. Now when we were informed of this, we thought it best to delay no longer: within a few days all our allies would revolt from us: we must not wait for the cavalry to arrive: already all was over with the Haedui: Ariovistus was at hand: and the soldiers terrified by his approach would not dare to fight unless we set out without delay.

3. So we set out at dawn of day and attacked the camp of the Germans as they slept: and they were panic-stricken at the first assault, and were not able to resist us.

4. So we took possession of the camp and sent some men to seek for Ariovistus. And in the evening they returned, unsuccessful.

The *oratio recta* has been given in Ex. 23: be prepared for a long series of infinitives. You will find participles useful in 2, 3, 4.

1. thus: say 'these things.' to one another: see 49.

the largest town they had: say 'the town which they had largest.' under his cruel dominion: abl. without preposition.

2. Now when we were informed of this: see 168.

it is best to delay: see 89.

within a few days: see 1.

3. and . . . not: see 168.

4. sent *some men* to seek: use the relative; see 156.

unsuccessful: see 77 (*f*) p. 71.

EXERCISE 33

A timely warning

When I reached Paris I went to call on my friend Eudēmus. And when I arrived at his house the old man embraced me and shed tears. Then I questioned him about the book which he had long been writing, and he asked me about my wife and children, and we prolonged our conversation far into the night. And when I had gone away to bed, it seemed to me in my sleep that a child of marvellous beauty was saying to me: "Arise, arise, Rufus, fly from this house." So at first I arose, terrified by the dream, that I might fly; then, when I had collected myself, I thought the dream of no account, and as I heard no

I go to call on him, *convenio eum*.

my friend Eudemus: Latin order, *Eudemus amicus meus*. (1) The name comes first, the words in apposition follow; (2) *meus*, *tuus*, *noster* etc. follow the substantive unless they are emphatic.

And when: see 31, 32.

I questioned him . . . , and he asked me: the verb should only be expressed once in the Latin; the meaning may be made clear by the use of pronouns: thus 'I him . . . , he me . . . questioned' (use *interrogo*).

he had long been writing: see 58.

far into the night, *in multam noctem*.

of marvellous beauty: abl. of quality.

it seemed to me that a child was saying: *videor* cannot be used impersonally: see 110.

at first, *primo* or *primo quidem*.

then, *dein*.

think of no account, *pro nihilo habeo*.

voice I lay down again. Then as I slept my friend Eudemus seemed to be saying to me: "Arise, arise, Rufus: with me all is over: do you fly while you may: my house is on fire." And when I heard this, I arose in terror and fled from the house: and as I entered the garden the slaves reported to me that Eudemus was dead, and that there was no hope that his book would be found.

and . . . no voice: see 168.

it is all over with him, *actum est de eo*.

EXERCISE 34

A letter to a friend

You learned from my former letter that my brother burned his ships to prevent their falling into the enemy's hands, and set out for the territory of the Helvetii. When he arrived there, he made a camp near the city of Geneva, and sent *off* letters to our allies, that the news of the arrival of a Roman army might reassure them all. On the 1st of March news was brought that the king of the Germans had crossed the Rhine with large forces, and that the allies of the Roman people would not be able to resist him, unless a large army set off to their assistance without delay. When he received this message my brother at once sent two cohorts to protect the Haedui, *and* himself led the rest of the army towards the river Rhine. I hope in a few days to be able to write *and tell* you that he has gained a victory over the enemy, but

Before doing this exercise read 73 ff. on the participles.

burned his ships . . . *and* set out : see 77 (*d*).

to prevent their falling : say 'lest they might come.'

When he arrived there : see 168.

that the news etc. : see 77 (*e*).

and that the allies would not . . . : don't use *et* : see 168. *Possum* has no future infinitive ; the present infin. generally takes its place : rarely *fore ut*.

to protect : use the relative.

gain a victory over : simply *vincere*.

I cannot conceal my anxiety; for the neighbouring chiefs, even though they are thought to be well disposed, still will not dare to refuse to help the Germans. Mind you write often: I should like to know whether you are going to stay at Rome till I come back or not.

for the neighbouring chiefs . . . : imitate the following sentence :
'even though he is secretly our friend, still he will not dare to be openly hostile to the Gauls, *etiamsi clam amicus est nobis, tamen aperte inimicus esse Gallis non audebit.*'

they are well disposed, *bene sentiunt.*

I should like to know whether . . . : see 120.

EXERCISE 35

A good omen

Accordingly, as the danger seemed now to threaten the city, the brave Paulus was appointed dictator to carry on the war with the Persae. And when he went home to bring the news to his wife, he saw his little daughter. So he kissed her and asked her what she had done that day: and as she made no answer but began to cry, he said "What is it, my child? why are you sad?" And she said "Father, Persa is dead." Now when he heard this he embraced the child so joyfully that she wondered why he was glad. So she asked him, and he said "This is a favourable

You will find participles useful, see especially 75, 77.

There are three different uses of 'now' in the exercise; compare these three sentences:

Now when he arrived, *Cum autem pervenisset* . . . Or *Qui cum pervenisset*.

As he had now recovered, *Cum iam convalesceret*.

Now (that) Catilina has been killed there is no danger, *Catilina mortuo nihil periculi est*.

Note the position of *inquit* after the first word or two of a speech:

And he said "Do you want to hear what is going on?"

Et ille 'Visne audire' inquit 'quid agatur?'

danger threatens the city, *impendet urbi periculum*.

the brave Paulus, *Paulus vir fortissimus*; note two points of difference between the English and the Latin idiom: (1) it is not usual in Latin to attach an adjective to a proper name: you could not write *Paulus fortis* without *vir*; (2) superlatives are often preferred in Latin.

bring the news: say 'report the matter.'

little daughter: use the diminutive *filiola*.

child: use *filia*.

Father: say 'My father.' What is the vocative of *meus*?

that she wondered: 'she' must be expressed. Why?

why? *qua de causa?*

a favourable omen, *omen secundum*.

omen, my child: just as I am about to set off to oppose the Persae, you bring me the news that Persa is dead, and I have no doubt that the gods thus give me to understand that in a few days the Persae will all either die or surrender to me. But don't you weep over the death of the dog: for when the war is finished I will see that the most beautiful dog the Persae have is given to you." But she answered "Now Persa is dead, no dog can be precious to me."

just as I am about to set off etc. : paraphrase thus 'for to me now about to start against the P. you bring the news etc.' Note that the connecting link 'for' is quite properly omitted in the English, but *enim* is necessary in the Latin.

to give me to understand, *significare mihi* (to show by a sign, *signum*).

don't you weep: see 125.

the most beautiful dog they have: say 'the dog which they have most beautiful.'

I will see that: use *curāre ut*, to take care that.

it is precious to me, *amori est mihi*.

EXERCISE 36

Magic

Of the ancient writers who does not speak of Teiresias? Now he when a boy used to feed sheep. And one of these sheep being lost, it is said that he made the following vow: "If I find the sheep," said he, "I will give to the god the largest bunch of grapes in the vineyard." So when the sheep was found by the help of the god, he entered the vineyard and found a bunch of wondrous size; and this he at once gave to the god. And when this story was noised abroad, the king sent for the shepherd and said to him that he was thinking of something. "Can you

Before doing this exercise read 31, 32.

Teirēsias, -ae.

Now he when a boy: say 'who *being* a boy.' *Puer* is in apposition to the subject of the sentence; in the same way *consul* is used in apposition to the subject in the following sentence *Eadem consul feci*, I did the same *as* consul, *or when* consul.

I make the following vow, *ita voveo* (I vow in this way, to this effect, thus).

If I find: see 53.

a bunch (of grapes), *uva*.

a vineyard, *vinea*.

I will give the largest bunch: say 'I will give to the god the bunch, which shall prove to be (*erit*) the largest in the vineyard.'

by the help of the god: use the verb *adiuvare*. You will find participles specially useful in this exercise.

the story was noised abroad: use the phrase *celebrare rem*, to make a thing well known.

I am thinking of something, *cogito* (1) *aliquid*: I am thinking of doing this, *cogito hoc facere*.

tell me," said he, "by the help of that god of yours whether it can be accomplished?" And the shepherd made answer that it could be accomplished. Then the king told him that he had been thinking of cutting a stone in two with a sword. And when he heard this, Teiresias bade them make trial. So when the stone was brought, he cut it through with the sword, while the king and the people looked on. And thus it came about that he was held to be the wisest of all men.

that god of yours, *deus iste*.

when the stone was brought: use a participle; mind the case.
See 76.

to look on, *inspectare*.

And thus it came about: say 'as a result of which (*ex quo*).'

it came about: the passive of *facio*.

he was held (to be) the wisest: use *habeo*, which is very common in the passive in this sense.

EXERCISE 37

An Eastern throne

As messages were brought to us almost every day to say that plots were being made against the Sultan Farfonilla by his enemies, and that the Englishmen who lived in the district in pursuit of trade were in the greatest danger, the Admiral ordered me to set sail for the city as speedily as possible with three cruisers, that the Sultan Farfonilla, the friend of the English people, might see that his safety was an object of care to us and that his enemies might retire in terror on the approach of the ships. So I started at once, and had such a prosperous voyage with the wind in my favour that I reached the harbour on the following evening. On my arrival, men came to report to me that the Sultan had already been poisoned and his kingdom seized by his uncle Dūrōba; that the Englishmen would be murdered unless I were willing to protect them. When I learned this, I sent Lieutenant Jones to tell Duroba that, if he did not surrender to me without delay, I should bombard the city. In that case, I should punish him and his friends. If, however, he came to me at once, I would grant him his life. When this message was given

The *oratio recta* has been given in Ex. 26.

on my arrival: do not use a substantive.

Lieutenant Jones: it will be best to use a Latin name, Trebōnius for instance.

In that case . . . : 'If I did so.'

him, he answered that the Sultan had committed suicide: he had tried to persuade him not to do so, but had not been successful. Now that the Sultan was dead, he had been made Sultan by the citizens in accordance with ancestral custom, and would not yield to me. If I chose to fight, he was ready to defend the city. When this was reported to me, thinking that Duroba was not to be trusted, I made all preparations for an attack on the city.

I am not successful, *nihil efficio*.

thinking : see 78, 79.

for an attack : not a substantive.

EXERCISE 38

A dream that came true

1. My friend Eudemus of Cyprus while making a journey to Macedonia came to Phērae: 2. this was a famous city in Thessaly, but was held by the tyrant Alexander under his cruel dominion. 3. Now in this town Eudemus was so seriously ill that all the doctors lost hope. 4. It seemed to him in a dream that a youth of marvellous beauty was saying that he would very soon recover and that in a few days the tyrant Alexander would die, but that Eudemus himself would after five years return home. 5. And what was foretold came true in the following way: Eudemus recovered; the tyrant was killed by his wife's brothers; and, as the fifth year was drawing to a close, when there was a hope in consequence of the dream that Eudemus would return to Cyprus, he was slain

Thessaly, *Thessālia*.

Alexander (2), like *magister*.

Syracuse, *Syrācūsae* (1): note that many names of cities are plural.

1. We say 'Eudemus of Cyprus'; the Roman says *Cyprius Eudēmus*, 'the Cyprian Eudemus.'

2. Connect with the relative, 'which was a city etc.': 'which' will be singular to agree with 'city.'

under his dominion: no preposition; abl.

5. Begin with *Atque*.

Insert *et* before 'Eudemus recovered,' and before 'the tyrant was killed.'

what was foretold: make 'what' plural and mind the tense; see 14. to come true, *evenire*.

in the following way, *ita*.

as the year was drawing-to-a-close (*ex-ire*): use the participle, and reserve *cum* for the next verb.

in consequence of, *ex*.

in battle near Syracuse. 6. Now the wise men interpreted the dream as follows: *they said* that the soul of Eudemus, when it left his body, did then return home.

in battle: say 'fighting.'

6. as follows, *ita*.

If you are puzzled to know how to arrange the words in a Latin sentence, you will sometimes find this rule useful: 'Begin with the word, or group of words, which is most closely connected in meaning with the preceding sentence.' Hence the pronoun *is* (referring to some person or thing just mentioned) will often form the connecting link. Here *ei* begins (4) because *ei* represents Eudemus, which was the subject of (3). On the other hand in (5) you should begin *Atque ita evenerunt* because of the emphasis on *ita* (= 'and in this way it all came true'). Sentences (2) and (3) will illustrate the rule.

EXERCISE 39

Hard pressed

When he read this he concealed the state of affairs and declared that Clive would come quickly to their support; he would arrive at the fort within three days: in the meanwhile there was nothing to fear: there were supplies enough for two months, and in their strongly built fort they could keep back any number of the Indians. Their safety depended on their courage: they must not lose hope, but must get everything ready for the defence of the fort.

This was the sort of thing which he said openly to the men, but in secret he read the letter to a few friends. As his looks did not agree with his way of speaking, and as he acted in everything more timidly

For the *oratio recta*, see Ex. 24.

he concealed the state of affairs and declared, *dissimulans pronuntiavit*.

Clive: say *imperator*.

there is nothing to fear: see 157.

to keep the enemy back, *sustinere hostes*.

any number: just as *qui-vis* means any one you please, so *quantus-vis* means of any size or number you please; say here *quantas-vis copias Indorum*.

This was the sort of thing etc., *Hacc et talia . . . militibus dixit* (this and the like of this).

his looks do not agree with his way of speaking, *vultus* (sing.) *cum oratione non consentit*.

he acts timidly in everything, *omnia timide agit*.

than had been his wont in the earlier days *of the siege*, and talked much in secret with his friends and avoided the rest, the state of things could not be concealed any longer. For Clive had written that he could not come, lest in his absence the whole of the province should revolt: accordingly, if any opportunity presented itself, he must force his way out of the camp and come to him with all his forces. This was rendered impossible by the besieging force.

earlier, *superior*.

the state of things, *res*: *res* often means what really is, as opposed to what is supposed to be; for instance, *non re sed nomine*.

to force one's way out, *erumpere e* (to break out).

This was rendered impossible by . . . , *Id ne fieri posset ab . . . fiebat* (That this should not be possible, was brought about by . . .).

the besieging force: turn by a relative clause.

EXERCISE 40

Socrates

Socrates, the wisest of the Greeks, used to say that he obeyed a divine voice which never urged him on but often called him back. Seeing one of his friends with a bandage over his eye, he asked what was the matter: and when he answered that he had gone out into the fields with Xenophon to take a walk, and that Xenophon had drawn back a bough and suddenly let it go, then Socrates said "Well, you did not take my advice when I tried to keep you back: for the god had warned me that some trouble was impending."

It was Socrates too who, after the unsuccessful fight near Delium, when he was flying with the general Laches, would not take the same road as the others.

a divine voice, *divina quaedam vox*; *quidam* may often be translated 'a certain (one)': it is sometimes less definite and means little more than 'a' or 'a sort of.'

which never urged him on (*im-pellĕre*, to drive . . . on), but called him back (*re-vocāre*, to call . . . back): use participles.

Seeing one etc.: paraphrase thus 'He (*qui*) when he saw the eye of a certain friend tied up' (*alligāre*, to tie up).

what's the matter? *quid est?*

Xenophon suddenly let go (*re-mittĕre*) a drawn-back bough (*ad-ducĕre rāmum*, to draw a bough to one's self, to draw it back).

Well, you did not . . . : say 'For you did not obey me when I was etc.' The present participle of *revocāre* will give the sense of 'trying to keep you back.' Note the use of *enim* in this sentence: 'You have suffered, for you did not' is implied in *enim*.

It was Socrates too, who . . . : say 'The same Socrates also, when the unsuccessful fight near Dēlium had taken place and he was flying etc., would not fly etc.' *Idem* is often used as here in continuing a story about the same person: you must use it again in this exercise to introduce the next paragraph and translate the word 'and.'

an unsuccessful fight took place, *male pugnatum est*.

Laches, *Lachēs*, gen. *Lachētis*.

take the same road: say 'fly by the same road.'

And when they asked why he did not proceed by the same road, he said that the god deterred him. He got back safe to Athens, while those who had fled by a different road came across the cavalry of the enemy.

And when he was condemned to death, Socrates said that he was quite content to die: for the god had given him no warning, either when leaving his home or when pleading his cause.

And when they asked: use the relative and the participle. Will you have the ablative absolute or the dative governed by *dixit*?

he said that the god deterred him: you must turn this into the passive, for if you write *deum se deterrere* the sentence will be ambiguous; it might mean that he was deterring the god or that the god was deterring himself: but if you say that he was being deterred by the god, the meaning will be quite clear. You should not have two accusatives with an infinitive, unless the context shows clearly which is the subject of the infinitive, which the object. Translate the following sentence in two ways: *Aio te, Aeacida, Romanos vincere posse* (*Aeacida* is a vocative, 'son of Aeacus'—*aio* means 'I say').

He got back (i.e. returned) safe: begin with *ipse*; see 47.

safe, *salvus*.

while those who . . . : don't use *dum* but *autem*.

to come across, *in-cidēre* (perf. *incidī*) *in*.

he was quite content to die: say 'he was dying with mind quite undisturbed (*aequissimo animo*).'

for the god . . . : begin *neque enim* 'for to him neither when leaving (say, stepping out from) home nor when etc., had any sign been made by the god.' Do you see the reason of this change to the passive?

EXERCISE 41

A letter from a Roman general

When I received intelligence of the Parthian war I led my army to Mount Gāmānus. Arrived there, I was informed that our friend Cassius had successfully driven back the enemy from the city of Antioch. Meanwhile with all my forces I harassed the Gamanienses, the perpetual foes of the Roman people. They were thrown into a panic by our unexpected arrival and could not withstand even our first attack: we took their largest city and burned it. And so I was hailed as Imperator by my soldiers near the Issus—where, as I have often heard from you, Darius was beaten by Alexander—and then I led my army away to attack a very well fortified town: if, as I hope, I take it, I shall then write an official letter but not before. We have now been besieging the town more than four-and-twenty days.

when I received intelligence, etc. : say 'when the war was reported.'
our friend Cassius, *Cassius noster*.

We hail you as Imperator, *Imperatorem te appellamus*. This only happened after a battle of some importance. The writer is evidently well pleased with himself.

as I have heard, *ut audivi*. Note this very common use of *ut*.
then but not before, *tum vero* (then indeed).

more than twenty-four days: see 58.

EXERCISE 42

Hannibal

Now when he had taken this city, it seemed to him in a dream that he was summoned into the council of the gods ;

and when he had come thither Jupiter commanded him to make war on Italy, and as leader gave him one of the council ;

and he with this leader began to advance with his army :

then that leader charged him not to look back :

but he could restrain himself no longer, and beside himself with curiosity he looked round :

then it seemed to him that a huge beast was destroying all the trees and houses and cities :

so he marvelled and asked the god what that monster was :

and the god answered that it was the desolation of Italy, and charged him to go straight forward :

as to what was happening behind him, he must not trouble himself.

I make war on Italy, *Italiae bellum in-fero*.

as leader : ' he gave me Socrates as teacher ' would be *Socratem mihi magistrum dedit*.

one of the council : of, *e*.

beside himself with curiosity, *elatus cupiditate* (carried out of himself, *e* and *fero*, by desire of seeing).

a huge beast, *belua immānis*.

destroy etc. : say ' lay waste all the trees, houses, cities. '

to go straight forward, *pergère* (to continue one's journey) *protinus* (straight on).

Note the phrase *non lābōro* or *nihil laboro*, I don't trouble myself (about it). Sometimes it has an indirect question dependent on it : *Quid ille agat non laboro*, As to what he's doing I don't trouble my head. Think of the direct form of this speech : ' It is the desolation etc. : go straight on : don't trouble yourself etc. ' As to indirect commands, see 149.

EXERCISE 43

Perhaps exaggerated

"In that country women exercise, it is said, not only an influence over their husbands but even absolute power. That you may the better understand this, I will tell you what I myself saw last year. It happened that I went one day to see my friend Arminius: and when I was making inquiries the servant said he was not at home. Then his wife, hearing my voice, came to the door and said 'He is not at home: for this morning he came to me and asked for permission to go into the city. And when he asked I gave him leave to go out. If, however, I had known that you were coming, I should not have suffered him to go away. But pray come in and have dinner with us: for I bade Arminius to come back before night: and that he might the more easily manage

it is said: see 111.

I exercise an influence over him, *auctoritatem in eum teneo*.

absolute power, *imperium*.

That you may the better understand this: see 8 and 32.

tell, *narro* (1).

I go to see him, *venio ad eum*.

one day: see 44.

my friend Arminius, *Arminius familiaris meus*.

make inquiries, *quaero* (3).

I ask for permission to talk, *Peto ut mihi liceat loqui*; I give you leave to talk, *Potestatem tibi facio loquendi*; I suffer or allow you to talk, *Patior te loqui*; I was not allowed to talk *non licuit mihi loqui*.

pray come in: see 124.

to manage, *efficere*.

this, I allowed him to ride the fastest horse he has.' But I was so frightened of the woman that I told her I was not hungry: for I was afraid that, having stepped in, I might not be allowed to step out."

Having told this tale he went away. But we who stayed behind wondered whether the man was to be trusted. I should like to know whether he seems to you a skilful liar. Mind you write every day.

I was so frightened etc. : say 'I, moved by fear of that woman, said etc.'

a skilful liar, skilful in lying: *perītus* with genitive. So *perītus regendi*, skilful in ruling, a skilful ruler.

EXERCISE 44

A true story

As to the journey we are making through this country I have much to write to you. Yesterday we started from the city and arrived in the evening at the river which separates my brother's province from the province of Crassus. I had been sent forward with a few soldiers to choose a place for a camp and have dinner prepared. And when we reached the river we saw that, owing to the great storms of the present month, it had grown so large and strong, that it was scarcely possible for us to cross it. When we had with great difficulty succeeded in our efforts, I stood on the bank to warn our dear Marcus where it should be crossed: and not long after he rode up to the bank and stood still; and when I was just going to shout, he suddenly rode forward and slipped down into the

I have much to write: see 157.

a few: use *quidam*.

owing to the storms: simply the abl.

the present month: 'this month.'

strong, *vchemens*.

possible for us to cross it: *eo* is an intransitive verb, but *transeo* (like many compounds from intransitive verbs) is transitive and may therefore have the personal construction in the passive: '[the river] was scarcely able to be crossed.'

When we had succeeded in our efforts: say 'which object (*quod*) when we had attained (*consequor*).'

just going to shout, *iam clāmaturus*.

suddenly, *subito*.

water: neither man nor horse was anywhere to be seen: I was paralysed with fear: then all of a sudden he rose to the surface, and, still on horseback, climbed up the bank, and we embraced one another.

it is not to be seen, *non appāret* (2).

to be paralysed: use *stupēre*.

all of a sudden, *repente*.

rise to the surface, *ex-sisto, exstiti* (3).

still on horseback, *eodem equo*; see 48.

EXERCISE 45

Friend or Foe?

The next day the Rajah came secretly to the camp and said that he had a communication to make to the officer in command. So he was brought in, and spoke to the following effect: he said that he for his part was a friend of the English people, through whose kindness he had recovered the kingdom of his ancestors: at present, however, it was necessary for him to conceal his friendly feeling and simulate hatred, if he wished to help us. As to his men having attacked our camp, that he had been compelled to do that the rest of the Indians might have no doubt as to his loyalty: their suspicions having been removed, he had been informed of their plans. So he had come both to seek forgiveness and to warn us that all the Indians had entered into a conspiracy: on an appointed day they were going to attack all our forts, so that one regiment might not be able to come to the aid of another. Therefore he warned, *nam* he begged the officer to provide for the safety of his men.

See notes to Ex. 25.

to the following effect, *in hunc modum*.

for his part, *quidem*.

EXERCISE 46

Friend or Foe? (continued)

If we wanted to get away in safety we must start before the forces of the Indians had come together. At present, indeed, it was easy to conduct even a force encumbered with baggage through his territory, whence it was not a long march to Fort William. This one promise he could make, that on the following day he would conduct them safely through his territory. On the other hand, if they lingered till the whole of Bengal was in revolt, he would not be able to help them.

Having said this, and begged the officer not to let it be known that the Rajah had been in the English camp, he went away into the city.

After this conversation Colonel N. at first felt doubtful what to do; for, if the Rajah had spoken the truth, he saw that prompt action was necessary, and all preparations for setting off must be made that very night. At last, however, he made up his mind that he must not adopt any rash measures: he must not leave the camp without orders from the General: any number of the natives could be held in check: he had not only withstood the first attack of the enemy, but had even driven back a host of the barbarians with great slaughter: there were supplies enough for twenty days: in the meantime support would arrive both from the nearest forts and from the General.

See Exx. 25 and 26.

After this conversation: do not use *sermo*; turn by a verb.
Colonel N., *legatus*; or use some Roman name.

EXERCISE 47

A desperate measure

Already the danger is almost at our doors: the Persian army is only twenty miles away: if it makes its way through the mountain-passes, shall we be able to defend our city? What are we to do then? Does any one recommend us to stay in the city, to receive the king, to surrender our wives, our children, ourselves? God forbid, you answer one and all. Our ancestors did not hesitate to oppose a countless host of barbarians: shall we who are rich in ships, rich in soldiers, rich in resources, shall we not withstand even the first attack? Hear then what is my advice: our city—for it cannot possibly be defended—our city must be abandoned: let us place

the danger is almost at our doors: use a different metaphor in Latin; the danger is hanging over us, *periculum impendet nobis* (dative).

Persian army, *Persarum exercitus*.

What are we to do: see 126-28.

ourselves, *nosmetipsos*. *met* is added to some pronouns for emphasis: *egomet*.

God forbid, *Di meliōra*, may the gods (grant) us better things.
one and all: *omnes* placed emphatically at the end.

shall we who are . . . : arrange thus 'we who in ships, who in soldiers, who in resources are rich, not even the first attack shall withstand?' It is a question, but *num* need not be added.

what is your advice? *quid tibi est consilii?*

it cannot possibly: say 'it cannot in any way,' *nullo modo potest*.

to place (for safety), *depono*. Begin this sentence with 'wives and children,' and the next with *ipsi*: the same order in Greek, but with *μέν* and *δέ* added: τὰς μὲν γυναῖκας . . . , ἡμεῖς δέ etc.

our wives and children on the island: let us embark on our ships and with our fleet defend our fatherland: let us either win or die an honourable death.

In rhetorical passages like this the sentences are not linked so closely together as in narrative pieces. In this passage we have a large number of short sentences as in English without any connecting link. Contrast any of the narrative pieces, Ex. 36 for instance.

EXERCISE 48

A successful campaign

When I arrived in my province on July 30th, I saw that, considering the lateness of the season, I ought to go to my army without delay. And as five cohorts were stationed near Elium, while the rest of the army was in Lycaonia, I ordered my lieutenant M. Anneius to bring those five cohorts to the rest of the army, and having collected the whole force in one place to make a camp in Lycaonia near Biconium. When my orders had been carefully carried out by him, I arrived in the camp on August 25th, having in the meanwhile prepared a suitable force of cavalry. And when I had begun to march into Cilicia, envoys sent to me by King Māgēnus brought the news that the Parthians had crossed over into Syria. On hearing this I thought I had better lead my army into Cappadocia: for if I had returned into Cilicia, I should indeed have easily been able to defend Cilicia itself, but Cappadocia, which is open on the Syrian side, would have been in danger: and the neighbouring kings, even if they are secretly friendly to us, still do not dare to be openly unfriendly to the Parthians.

Lycāōnia, Cilicia, Cappadōcia.

considering the lateness of the season, *propter anni tempus.*

while: do not use *dum*, for 'while' has no temporal force here; *autem* will supply the necessary link.

near Biconium, *apud Bicōnium.*

When my orders etc.: say 'when this had been carefully done.'

I arrived: *ego* will be expressed as it is slightly emphasised.

having in the meanwhile prepared: use *cum*.

indeed . . . Cilicia itself: arrange thus 'Cilicia indeed itself I should etc.'

it is open on the Syrian side, *a Sŷria patet.*

EXERCISE 49

A successful campaign (continued)

So I made my camp on the edge of Cappadocia not far from Mount Taurus near the town of Cistra, that I might both watch over Cilicia, and, holding Cappadocia *in my power*, might check the neighbouring kings from helping the Parthians. In the meantime King Deiotarus sent me envoys to say that he would come to my camp with all his forces. Touched by his zeal I thanked him by letter, and urged him to hasten to do so. On the following day I learned by letters and messengers that great forces of the Parthians had advanced as far as the town of Antioch, and that a large body of their cavalry, which had crossed into Cilicia, had been beaten by my horsemen. Accordingly, as I saw that the forces of the Parthians had turned away from Cappadocia and were not far from the frontier of Cilicia, I led my army by forced marches towards Mount Gamanus.

the edge of the country, *terra extrema* ; compare *summus mons*, the top of the mountain.

Deiotarus is referred to in Lucan : 'fidumque per arma Dēiōtārum.' touched, *commōtus*.

'to do so' may be expressed by *id*.

I hasten, *mātūro* (1).

to advance as far as, *accedere ad*.

Accordingly, *Qua re* : see 32.

had turned away : the passive of *averto* is used in this sense (for the active means to turn some one or something away).

EXERCISE 50

A successful campaign (continued)

On my arrival I learned that the enemy had retired from the neighbourhood of Antioch, and that Bibŭlus was at Antioch: I informed Deiotarus, who was already hastening to *join* me with all his forces, that there seemed to be no reason why he should leave his kingdom and that I would send him letters and messengers at once, in case anything went wrong. And as I wished to help the allies of the Roman people, I decided to remove our enemies from Mount Gamanus. So I pretended to be leaving the district in order to conduct my army to its winter-quarters. But when I was at a distance of one day's march from the mountain, I started off in the evening with my army in light marching order, and in the middle of the night began to climb up the mountain: at dawn I attacked the enemy who were asleep; and they were slain or made prisoners, being cut off from flight. Having thus carried out my plans, I made my camp at the foot of the mountain, and we spent five days in burning the towns and laying waste the fields.

from the neighbourhood of, *ab*.

there is no reason why you should leave your kingdom, *causa non est cur a regno absis*; see 157.

in case anything goes wrong I will let you know, *si quid novi forte acciderit certiore te faciam*. *Si forte*, 'if perchance,' is used very much like our 'in case.' *Si quid novi acciderit*, literally means, 'If anything new happens.' There is sometimes a suggestion that the new thing will be a misfortune.

with my army in light marching order, *expedito exercitu* (the army not being encumbered with baggage).

slain or made prisoners: use *-que* for 'or.'

Having carried out my plans: use the words *gerere has res*. As a rule you should not translate *res* by 'thing,' but supply a suitable word from the context.

EXERCISE 51

A successful campaign (continued)

When these operations were finished, I led my army away to the town of Nissus: as I had heard that this town occupied a very lofty and well fortified position and was inhabited by men who had never acknowledged the supremacy of Rome and were looking eagerly for the coming of the Parthians, I thought it my duty to crush their audacity, in order that the spirit of the others who opposed our rule might also more easily be broken. I surrounded the town with a rampart and a ditch, and with the help of many engines I finished the matter off on the fifty-seventh day, and the citizens surrendered to me. After the capture of Nissus I received hostages from the neighbouring states, and dismissed the army to winter-quarters.

operations, *res*.

it occupies a lofty position, *alto est loco*.

It is inhabited by men who . . . , *incolitur ab iis qui* with subj. ; *iis* is emphatic here and means 'the sort of people who . . .' See 158. to acknowledge the supremacy of Rome, *populi Romani imperio obtemperare*.

they oppose our rule, *alieni sunt ab imperio nostro*.

with the help of: participle of *utor*, I use.

EXERCISE 52

A false alarm

Our countrymen who live in that city are in imminent danger. They are sending us messengers almost every day to say that the Transvalani have deprived the British of their arms, and imposed taxes on them: that our countrymen are sending the women and children to the cities on the sea-coast that the fleet may protect them: that they themselves cannot abandon the city; for if they do so they must leave behind all their possessions. What are we to do then? Are we to set out to their aid, or are we to stay at home? There are some who say that if we march into the territory of the Transvalani we shall break the treaty. If a man says this, I should like to ask him whether the Transvalani have done no wrong to us. I for my part don't trouble myself about the treaty. I know that our fellow-countrymen are in danger: if we will not help them, in a few days all will be over. We must act promptly if we

Say 'Danger is hanging over our countrymen' (*nostri*, our people).

I deprive you of arms, *arma tibi eripio*.

I impose taxes on you, *vectigālia tibi impono*.

for if they do so: paraphrase this a little: 'which if we do we must abandon all that we have' (it is safer to work out the whole message in *oratio recta* first).

what are we to do? see 128.

There are some who say: see 157.

I for my part, *Equidem*.

wish to save the lives of our friends: we must not talk about a treaty. So let us set out this very night: no great preparations are necessary: we must go in light marching order; . . .

to save the lives, *consulere salutē* (dat.) (to take measures for the safety).

So let us set out: use *proinde* for 'so.'

no great preparations etc., 'we need not prepare many things.'

in light marching order: look up 'march.'

The speech is evidently unfinished; make up a continuation of it.

EXERCISE 53

Travel

Accordingly, as my father and mother were dead, there was nothing to prevent my leaving my country : for I had long been desirous of visiting many lands. And so I sold my house and all that I had, so that I might have money enough for making a long journey ; and having bidden my friends farewell I set off on August 23rd. I crossed the sea and went on through many cities, and at last in the fifth month I reached the city of Cirta. When I arrived there my chief object was to see a certain Diodōrus, a man of great wealth and very friendly to the Roman people, and I delivered to him a letter which my friend Lucius had given me. When he had read it he said " You are very welcome, for Lucius is very dear to me : I hope that you will stay with me as long as you can." Then he talked much about Lucius, and gave me much information about his own city, and persuaded me to stay ten days with him.

nothing to prevent : see 157.

I go on, *progredior*.

my chief object is to see (i.e. to have an interview with) him, *nihil mihi potius* ('more important') *est quam ut eum conveniam*.

You are welcome, *gratus mihi venis*.

I hope : use *velim* ; see 122.

as long as : see 63.

give information : use *doceo*.

EXERCISE 54

The vengeance of the goddess

So when he had taken the city, we could not prevent him from putting the men to death, selling the women and children, and robbing the temples. Now there was in a certain chapel a statue of Diana of wondrous beauty: as he wanted to carry this off to Rome, but felt doubtful whether it was solid gold or gilt, he had a hole drilled through it: finding it solid he gave orders for it to be taken on board his ship. But that night he seemed in a dream to see Diana coming to him to warn him not to do this thing. "If you do so," said she, "you will become lame of one leg." When he heard this, he thought at first that the dream should not be neglected, and he made up his mind to give orders in the morning that no one should touch the statue. But when he awoke in the morning and looked out of the window and saw the statue shining in the sunlight, he thought lightly of the voice of the goddess which he had seemed to hear in the darkness of the night. So the statue was taken on board, and he carried it off home with him. But the day after he returned, when he was bathing in the river, he wounded his right foot so seriously that he became lame.

Is the statue solid gold or is it gilt? *Utrum solida est statua an extrinsecus aurata* (Is it solid or covered-with-gold outside?).

pertrẽbrare statuam, to make a hole through a statue.

he had a hole drilled: see 86.

and looked out of the window and saw etc.: one verb will be sufficient; say 'and from the window had looked down on (*despicio, desperi*).'

think lightly of, *contemno* (3): use the imperfect.

so the statue was taken . . . : see 77 (*d*).

EXERCISE 55

A Roman story

The supply of food was running short and there seemed but little hope of safety, when there came into the camp one day a deserter from the enemy and said to one of the soldiers that if we gave him a considerable reward he would return to his camp and poison the king. So he was brought to the general, and questioned *as to* what he promised to do. He replied "This is what I promise: if you give me a large sum of money I will poison our king this very night: if I do so, you will be able to retire into the territory of your allies. For there is no one worthy to command us when the king is dead."

On hearing this Quintus at first felt doubtful what was to be done, for the army was in the greatest danger. But after a time he gave the deserter to ten soldiers to take back to the king. Who is there who would not praise this deed? Have we not learned from our ancestors that we must adopt no treacherous measures, that an enemy is to be beaten by valour not by knavish tricks?

The first sentence will require to be paraphrased 'When the food was now (*iam*) running short, and not (*neque*) much hope of safety . . . , there came . . .' If you examine the English you will see that 'when there came a deserter' (though grammatically subordinate) is really the principal statement, to which the other clauses lead up.

run short, *deficio*.

But after a time, *post autem aliquanto*.

to take back: see 86.

knavish tricks: use *scelus*, *-eris* in the singular.

EXERCISE 56

An attempt at bribery

Before doing this exercise see 156-58 on the use of the relative with the subjunctive.

If you were a Roman citizen, if you were a fit person for me to touch, I would throw you out of that window. But since you are a prisoner and a slave, you may take up that money of yours and go out of the house unharmed. But I just give you this warning, don't come back to me again, at any rate if you wish to consult your own interests: and do not think that by bringing me money you will persuade me either to condemn that innocent man or to acquit you. For if the thing ought to be done, I shall do it: but if not, there is not enough money in the whole world to induce me to do it.

fit, *dignus*.

throw, *deicio*.

take up, *tollo*.

just this, *illud unum*.

back again, *rursus* (from *re-versus*).

at any rate if, *si quidem*.

I consult my own interests, *mihi consulo*.

bring: use *offero*.

but if not, *sin minus*.

world, *orbis terrarum*.

induce; use *persuadeo*.

EXERCISE 57

A suspicious tale

When I heard that a great disturbance had been caused in the territory of the Vēnēti, and that the Roman citizens who lived in the district were in the greatest danger, I decided that I must not wait for Caesar's return, and started off with all my forces. And as our *fellow-citizens* kept on begging me to act promptly, I led my army by forced marches, and at length on the fifth day I made my camp not far from the river which separates the territory of the Veneti from the territory of the Osismii. On the following day the king of the Veneti came to me secretly, and with tears begged me to help him: he said that he dared not be openly friendly to the Roman people, that plots were being made against him by his brother, who wished to be king: that it had been necessary for him to conceal both his fear of his enemies and his friendly feeling for the Romans: now, however, owing to the unexpected arrival of my army his brother had no spirit left in him: if I would promise my protection, he could crush his brother's audacity: only I must not tell any one that the king of the Veneti had come into the Roman camp to beg for help.

First write out the *oratio recta*.

kept on begging me: say 'begged me again and again' (*etiam atque etiam*).

had no spirit etc.: say 'his brother's spirit had been broken by the arrival etc.'

only I must not tell: the direct form would be 'don't tell any one': see 149. Use *modo* for 'only' with commands.

On hearing this I promised to take measures for the safety of the king and his kingdom : as, however, I felt doubtful whether the king was to be trusted, I added that, in case anything happened to the Roman citizens, I would crucify the king and his brother and all the leading men in the state. When he heard this he thanked me warmly and went away into the city.

in case anything . . . , *si quid novi* (anything new). He means, of course, 'if any harm should happen,' but avoids saying it.

EXERCISE 58

In the Law Courts

You have heard my story. Gentlemen of the jury, do you still doubt that this man robbed his province? Does he himself deny it? Does he try to conceal it? I saw what would be his defence: he made no answer to what I said: he urged that he had been a good general and one blessed by fortune: that he had kept his province safe from the runaway slaves, who at that time under Spartacus were, he said, a great danger to Italy. [*Turning to the defendant*] Great is the glory of a good general: but still I did not ask what had been your military achievements, I asked whether you had kept your hands off other men's riches: I asked why you condemned without trial the virtuous Cleomēnes, why you threw him into prison and kept him in darkness for two years, and did not allow any of his friends, not his father, nor his wife, nor his son, to approach the wretched man. I ask you this and you answer that by your valour and vigilance you set Sicily free from the forces of the slaves, that you finished off a great war. But after

my story: express by a relative sentence.

this man, *iste* (pointing at him in the court).

What is his defence? *Quid defendit?* (What does he allege or maintain in defence, What is his line of defence?)

no answer to: to, *ad*.

'he urged' should be omitted.

blessed by fortune, *felix*.

under Spartacus, 'with Spartacus as leader.'

military achievements, *in re militari fortiter facere*.

keep your hands off other men's riches, *ab alienis pecuniis manus abstinere*.

after all, *tamen*.

all what war did you wage? What slaves did you conquer? For we who live in Rome have heard nothing about a war. We want to know who led the enemy's forces, where you fought your battle, how many men were engaged in the war. If you can give us information about these matters, I myself will beg the jury to acquit you.

fight a battle, *praelium committere*.

EXERCISE 59

A stormy night

When he received this information, the General, feeling that the city had at all times been loyal to the British flag, immediately gave orders for five hundred horsemen to start at midnight and hasten to the town. He placed in command of this force Richards, a well-known man of the district. That night the weather was so violent and the wind so boisterous, that you could scarcely see or hear a man quite close to you. This was a great advantage to our men. Accordingly, Richards ordered his men, when they reached the enemy's lines, to go straight on and hasten through

Rather less help will now be given and you will do well to translate more freely. You will often find it necessary to supply a connecting link between the sentences, and sometimes to alter the structure of the sentence. Do not be content to merely look up the words and write them down with suitable terminations, but work at each sentence till you feel satisfied that it sounds like a real Latin sentence. You will not find all the words in the dictionary, but, with a little thought, you will be able to supply them: for instance you will not find 'trooper,' but if you know what a trooper is, you will have no difficulty in recalling the Latin equivalent, for you have used it hundreds of times.

In translating this and similar passages you can either substitute a Latin name for an English one or change the English name into a Latin form: for Richards either *Ricardus* or *Cotta* (for instance) will do very well.

feeling: use *arbitrari*: see 79.

loyal to the British flag: Roman writers say in something very like this sense *ea civitas omni tempore optime de populo Romano merita est* (the city has at all times deserved well of the Roman people). We may imitate the expression *populus Romanus* and write *populus Britannicus*.

weather etc.: say 'such was the violence (*vis*) of the weather.'

boisterous, *vehemens*.

a man quite close to you, *proximus quisque*.

lines: use *praesidium* (pl.). I go straight on, *pergo prōtinus*.

their encampment to the city: he had been informed, so he told them, that the enemy supposed that we were still a hundred miles away, and were therefore not keeping watch very carefully: they were expecting their allies, and would not be aroused by the arrival of five hundred horsemen.

Everything happened as he had hoped. When they were in the middle of the French camp and people were beginning to ask who they were, one of the troopers, who had lived some time in Paris at the British Embassy, replied in French that they were friends. This answer deceived them, and they offered no resistance. When our men drew near the gate of the town, they gave a signal and were admitted by the townspeople, without the French having any suspicion that the town was being handed over to us.

to keep watch, *vigilias agere*.

arouse, *excitare*.

happen: use *evenire*.

people were beginning to ask: use *quaerere* impersonally.

at the Embassy, *apud legatum* (i.e. *chez l'Ambassadeur*).

admit, *recipio*.

EXERCISE 60

A dilemma

The same day a report reached us that those who remained in the fort were in the greatest danger: as supplies were running short, and there was no hope of cutting their way through the enemy, they would die in a few days either by the sword or by starvation. The Kaffirs, *it was said*, had sent messengers in all directions to let the neighbouring chiefs know how few of our men there were and what a good opportunity was offered them to set their country free: if they could cut off this little band of Englishmen from the rest of the army, the English would even gladly make peace in order to rescue their friends from their perilous position. So we should be too late unless we reached the camp on the following day.

When we received this message, we were at first doubtful what should be done. For if we set out to the assistance of our friends, *we thought* that the enemy would march *down* to the sea *and* burn the ships: if they did so, it would soon be all over with us. At last we decided to leave a few men to guard the ships if possible: with the rest we hastened with all speed towards the fort.

See Ex. 24 and the notes there given.

at first, *primo quidem*: at last, *postremo*.

if possible: say 'if it could be done.'

we hastened with all speed, *omni celeritate ire contendimus*. *Contendo* means 'I exert all my power, strain every nerve.'

EXERCISE 61

The Rubicon

When therefore the news came that the tribunes had fled from the city, he at once sent forward his cohorts secretly in order that no suspicion might be aroused, and, pretending that nothing had happened, he dined and talked with his friends, as was his wont. Then after sunset he started off with a few companions by a route which was little known: having put out their lights they lost the way and wandered about for a long while: at last towards dawn they found a guide and got back to the road. He followed the cohorts as far as the river which was the boundary of his province, and there stood still for a minute, and as he reflected what a mighty task he was taking in hand, he turned to those who were standing by and said, "We can still retrace our steps: but if we cross the bridge, the sword must decide the rest."

pretending that nothing had happened: simply *dissimulans*. What is the difference between *simulo* and *dissimulo*? *Quod non est simulo, dissimuloque quod est.*

to start off by a little known route, *occultum iter ingredi* (to enter on a secret road).

to lose the way, *de via decedere*.

towards dawn, *ad lucem*.

as far as, *ad*.

the river which was the boundary: the relative will be masculine to agree with *finis*, 'boundary,' not neuter to agree with *flumen*. This attraction is usual when the verb of the relative clause is a copulative verb: e.g. *gloria, qui est fructus virtutis*, glory which is the fruit of virtue.

for a minute, *paulum*.

reflect, *reputo*.

what a mighty task I am taking in hand, *quantum mōlior* (4).

who were standing by: use *adsum*.

I retrace my steps, *regredior*.

the sword must decide: not to be translated literally.

EXERCISE 62

Caesar and the pirates

About the same time Caesar accused Dolabella of extortion. On his acquittal, Caesar determined to go away to Rhodes, in order both to avoid the ill-feeling which he had aroused and to study under Molo, at that time the most distinguished teacher of oratory. While he was going across to the island, somewhat late in the season, he was captured by pirates, and he remained among them for nearly six weeks with one friend and two slaves; for he had sent off in different directions the rest of his friends and slaves

acquittal: use the verb. In Latin the substantives formed from the verb are not nearly so freely used as in English. When substantives are not given in the dictionary, you should try the corresponding verb: with a little ingenuity you will be able to find out what part of the verb to use: here are a few examples:

the murderer of the child, *qui puerum interfecerat*.

on the surrender of the city, *urbe dedita*.

a teacher of oratory, *magister dicendi*.

he started in pursuit of the enemy, *ad persequendos hostes profectus est*.

he prepared a fleet for the conquest of the British, *classem comparavit qua Britannos vinceret*.

Rhodes, *Rhodus*: a small island; no preposition is necessary.

to arouse ill-feeling, *invidiam conflare* (from *flare*, to blow: to blow into a fire so as to kindle it).

I study under Molo, *Molōnem audio* (I hear Molo lecture).

somewhat late in the season, *hibernis iam mensibus* (when the winter months were already beginning).

nearly six weeks: the Romans did not divide their time into weeks, so we must say 'nearly forty days.' Obviously a round number gives the writer's meaning best.

I send off in different directions, *alios alio dimitto* (I send off different persons in different directions, some to one place, some to another). *Alio* is the adverb of *alius*, like *quo* (= to which place) from *qui*. This double use of *alius* is very common: *alii alia dicunt*, different people say different things; some say one thing, some another.

to procure the money for his ransom. When the money was brought and he was set free, he sailed to Milētus, and immediately manned five ships and set sail in pursuit of the pirates. He attacked them unexpectedly and made them prisoners, and did not hesitate to inflict on them the punishment with which he had often threatened them in jest. For while he was staying among them as a prisoner, he used to write poems and read them aloud to the pirates: and if any one did not admire what he wrote, he would call him a barbarian, and threaten that he would crucify him some day.

I procure money, *pecunias expedio* (4).

I man a ship, *compleo navem* (to give the ship its complement of men and stores).

EXERCISE 63

In the House of Lords

It seems to me, my lords, that you fail to understand that the question before you is, not whether we are to have peace or war, (for King Philip will not leave that open to you, he is setting about a great war both by land and sea,) but whether we are to carry our forces across to Spain or to receive the enemy into Britain. What an important difference this makes, you have certainly learned by your experience in the recent war, if never before. If Philip sends his soldiers over to Britain, do you believe that the Irish will keep quiet and maintain their loyalty to the throne? Never will that people fail to side against us, whenever they have any one, to

A question in the deliberative subjunctive suffers no change of mood when made indirect :

Direct — *Utrum cedamus an resistamus?* Are we to yield or resist?

Indirect—*Quaerit utrum cedamus an resistamus*, He asks whether we are to yield or resist.

my lords, *patres conscripti*.

fail to understand : use *ignorare*.

the question before you is : say 'you are being consulted.'

Philip, *Philippus*.

I leave it open to you, *liberum id vobis permitto*.

to set about a great war, *ingens bellum mōliri*.

to learn by experience, *experiri*.

recent : use *proximus*.

Irish, *Hiberni*.

maintain loyalty to the throne, *in fide manēre*.

never will that people etc. : arrange thus 'Never will that people, unless when there is wanting one to whom they may go over (*desciscere*), not revolt from us.' Here is a similar sentence : *Numquam ego, nisi cum deerint quibus subveniam, non resistam tibi*.

whom they can go over. Let Spain have the war rather than Britain: let the enemy's cities and the enemy's fields be wasted with fire and sword: we have already learned by experience that our arms are more fortunate and more powerful abroad than at home.

with fire and sword, *ferro atque igni.*

EXERCISE 64

An official report

Though I kept receiving reports that the Parthians had crossed the Euphrates with nearly all their forces, still, as I thought that more definite information with regard to these matters could be sent you by the proconsul M. Bibŭlus, I decided that it was not necessary for me to report to you officially the intelligence which reached me with regard to another man's province. However, after I had received information from most trustworthy sources, as the matter was so important, I thought I ought to report to you what I had heard. The envoys of King Antiochus were the first to bring me the news that large forces of the Parthians had begun to cross the Euphrates.

I kept receiving reports: use *nuntio* (to bring a report) in the imperfect.

I send you definite information, *certa ad vos scribo*.

I report [in writing], *scribo*.

from most trustworthy sources, *certissimis auctoribus*.

so important, *tantus*.

EXERCISE 65

An official report (continued)

When this message was brought to me, as there were some who thought the king not particularly trustworthy, I decided that it was best to wait in case any more definite intelligence should be brought. On September 20th, when I was leading my army into Cilicia, a letter was delivered me on the frontier line between Lycaonia and Cappadocia from Tarcus, (who is, it is thought, the most faithful ally of the Roman people on the other side of Mount Taurus), saying that Acōrus, the son of the king of the Parthians, had crossed the Euphrates with a very large force of cavalry and had pitched his camp at Dyba, and that a great disturbance had been caused in the province of Syria. On the same day a letter on the same subject was delivered me from the king of the Arābes, who is considered loyal and friendly to our interests.

there were some (*non-nulli*) who : see 157.

in case any more definite etc. : he said to himself 'I must wait in case anything more definite etc. (*si quid certius ad-feratur*).'

on the frontier line : say 'on the boundary (*fines*) of Cappadocia and Lycaonia.'

on the other side, *trans*.

our interests, *res publica nostra*.

EXERCISE 66

An official report (continued)

When I received this news I decided to lead my army to Mount Taurus, that the enemy might know that a Roman army not only does not give way at news of danger, but even advances to meet it. If, however, I may give you one piece of advice, I earnestly advise and urge you to take measures at last for these provinces. You are not ignorant how small is the force under my command. But no danger can be so great that I should wish to shirk it. Unless, however, you send at once to these provinces a large army, such as you are accustomed to send for an important war, there is great danger that all these provinces may be lost.

to give way, *cedere*.

to advance to meet it : say 'to advance nearer,' *propius accedere*.
earnestly, *magno opere*.

at last, *aliquando* (lit. at some time or other. however late).

how small is the force etc. : say 'how few I am in command of.'

that I should wish to shirk it : begin with the relative. See 157.
shirk, *subterfugio*.

a large army such as etc. : say 'so large an army as you are wont to send for (*ad*) a very great war.'

there is danger that, *periculum est ne*.

EXERCISE 67

A scoffer

After robbing the temple of Proserpina at Locri Dionysius sailed to Syracuse: and as he went on his way with the wind all in his favour, he said with a laugh "Do you see, my friends, what a nice voyage is granted to the impious by the immortal gods?" When he had reached the Peloponnesus, he went into the temple of Jupiter Olympius, and pulled off the statue the golden robe of great weight with which the tyrant Gēlo had adorned Jupiter out of the spoils of the Carthaginians, playfully remarking that in the summer a golden robe was heavy, and in the winter it was cold, and he put on the statue a woollen shawl, saying that that was suitable for every season of the year. He also ordered the golden beard of Aesculāpius to be removed; for, he said, it was not appropriate that the son should be provided with a beard, considering that in all the temples the father was without one.

I go on my way, *cursum teneo*.

what a nice voyage, *quam bona navigatio*.

I pull a robe off a statue, *vestem statuae* (dat.) *detraho*.

playfully remarking: say 'and he remarked jesting (*iocans*).'

I put a shawl on a statue, *pallium* (neut.) *statuae in-icio* (a compound of *in* and *icio*).

saying: don't use a present participle in the nominative with another verb dependent on it.

also: see 48 and note to Ex. 40 ('It was Socrates too').

beard, *barba*; provided with a beard, *barbatus*; without one, *imberbis*.

Aesculapius was the son of Apollo.

it is appropriate, *convenit*.

'he said' should be omitted, as a verb of saying (*iussit*) has come just before.

EXERCISE 68

A scoffer (continued)

Dionysius, of whom I spoke above, did not hesitate to remove the little golden figures of Victory and the crowns which were held by the outstretched hands of statues, and he would say that he was not stealing these things but accepting them; for it was foolish to ask the gods for blessings, and refuse to take them when they held them out and offered them to us. They also say that he brought out into the market-place these things which I have mentioned, which he had removed from the temples, and sold them, and when payment had been enforced he gave notice that the purchasers should bring back everything to the temples before an appointed day. Thus with impiety towards the gods he combined injustice towards men. Yet Jupiter Olympius did not strike him down with a thunderbolt, nor did Aesculapius slay him with sickness, but he died in his bed and handed on as a legacy to his son the power which he had obtained by wickedness.

Victoriola, a little figure of victory. hold, *sustineo*.

I stretch the hand out, *porrigo* (like *rego*) *manum*.

he would say, i.e. he used to say.

for it was foolish, etc.: the following sentence will help you, but be careful to adapt it to suit the passage: *A quibus bona precamur, ab eis porrigentibus et dantibus nolumus sumere*, We ask the gods for blessings, and refuse etc. (literally, From whom we pray for blessings, from them, holding them out and offering them, we will not take them).

I bring out into the market-place, *in forum profero*.

enforce payment, *exigo pecuniam* (from *ex* and *ago*), *exēgi*, *exactum*.

the purchasers: a relative clause. an appointed day, *dies certus*.

I combine this with that, *adiungo hanc rem ad eam rem*.

slay, *interimo*. as a legacy, *hereditatis loco*.

by wickedness, *per scelus*.

EXERCISE 69

Pyramus and Thisbe

Once upon a time there lived in the city of Babylon a youth of marvellous beauty, Pyramus by name. In the next house lived Thisbe, than whom no maiden was more fair to see. Now he being driven by love of her begged his father that he might be permitted to marry her. But he, inasmuch as he had no wish to give his son money, persuaded Thisbe's father to forbid his daughter to talk with Pyramus. Thereby he hoped that his son would soon forget the maiden. And so the youth was not granted permission to approach the poor girl, and the girl was not allowed to go forth from the house. But yet the lovers—for what does not love accomplish?—used to talk daily to one another: for in the wall which was common to both houses was a hidden crack: through this crack they would talk in low voices, and when at nightfall they said farewell, they would give kisses, he to his side, she to her side of the wall, which kisses for all that did not make their way through to the other side.

Bäbȳlōn, -ōnis, f.: Pȳrāmus, -i: Thisbē, -ae.

fair to see, *formōsus* (literally 'shapely').

driven by love: *amore captus*, or *impulsus*, or *ardens*.

thereby, *Quo facto.* grant permission to go, *potestatem dāre eundī.*

to be hidden, *lātēre.*

in low voices, *submissā voce* (sinking the voice).

they would give: 'they used to give.'

he to his side, she to her side, *suae quisque parti* (each to his (or her) own side). The Latin expression is neater than ours, because we have no word like *suus* = his or her: *quisque* is strictly speaking masculine, but may be used as shown in reference to a masculine and feminine antecedent.

which for all that, *quae tamen* (nevertheless, i.e. in spite of their doing all they could).

make their way through (*per-vēnīre*).

EXERCISE 70

Pyramus and Thisbe (continued)

‘Thanks, courteous wall.’

Then of a truth Thisbe could not restrain herself from weeping, and Pyramus, scarce holding back his tears, would thus lament their lot: “Oh grudging wall, why dost thou stand in the way of a youthful lover that he may not go to his beloved? Would that the crack in thee were wide enough at least for kissing! Would that I could see but one eye of my lady! Yet we are not ungrateful to thee, most kindly wall; for were it not for thee, I should not be able to say even one word to my Thisbe.” Thus would they talk and then go sadly away.

But when now for many a month Pyramus had been permitted to hear his lady’s voice but not to see her face, he persuaded Thisbe to try on the following night to outwit the watchmen and make her way from the house, and, leaving the city behind, to hasten to the tomb of Nînus.

Then of a truth, *Tum vero*.

would thus lament their lot, *in hunc modum* (in this manner) *quæri* (to lament, bewail) *solebat*. Omit ‘their lot.’

grudging, *invidus*: from *invidere* (to look spitefully upon, to envy or grudge).

Would that the crack etc.: say ‘Would that thou wert sufficiently open’: ‘to be open,’ *pātēre*. Here is a somewhat similar sentence: *Utinam paries satis pateat ad loquendum*, I hope the wall will have a hole large enough for talking. See 130.

at least, *saltem*. but one, *vel unus*.

were it not for thee, *nisi per te liceret*. Thus, *Haec et talia*.

But when now for many a month: compare this sentence *Multos iam mihi menses litteras quidem ad te scribere licet, vultum tuum videre non licet* (Now for many a month I have been permitted to write to you but not to see your face). Note *quidem* which we express by emphasising the word ‘write’ (= *litteras scribere*).

following night, *postera nox*. make her way from, *excedere*, abl.

EXERCISE 71

Pyramus and Thisbe (continued)

‘This grisly beast.’

Accordingly on the following day, when at length the night had come and her parents were now asleep, Thisbe stepped out secretly and came to the appointed place. Since, however, led on by love she had come too early and Pyramus was not yet there, she sat down under a tree which hung over the tomb and waited for the youth. But lo! suddenly she sees a lion approach, who, after devouring an ox which he had slain, was seeking the river that with its water he might quench his thirst. As soon as she saw him she fled into the dark tomb, and while she fled in terror, her cloak slipped down from her back. Now, when the lion had drunk a great draught of water and was now about to return to the forest, he chanced to find the cloak upon the ground and tore it to pieces with his bloody mouth.

hung over: use *imminēre* (dat.) in the imperfect.

chanced to find, *forte* (by chance) *invenit*.

bloody, *cruentus*.

EXERCISE 72

Pyramus and Thisbe (continued)

‘Anon comes Pyramus.’

And now Pyramus approaches, and seeing in the deep sand the lion's track he hurries in terror towards the appointed place. And when he recognised Thisbe's cloak covered with blood, thinking that she had been devoured by the lion, he exclaimed “Ah me! it is I beloved who have slain thee, I who bade thee come to a place full of perils and did not myself come first. Approach then ye lions who inhabit these forests, that you may rend my body also. But it is cowardly to beg the wild beasts to come to my aid. With my own hand will I slay myself.” Then he kissed the cloak he knew so well, and said “My blood also shalt thou receive, O beloved cloak,” and he drew his sword and plunged it into his breast.

Meanwhile Thisbe, though she had not yet put away her fears, was longing to tell her beloved what perils she had escaped. At length she takes courage to step out of the tomb: she sees nothing to fear; so she approaches to get back her cloak.

covered with blood, *cruore oblitum*; *oblīnere* means ‘to smear.’

Ah me! *Me miserum*.

It is I who: *ego* coming first will express this.

first (of two people), *prior*.

‘he knew so well’ may be expressed by the participle *notus*.

I plunge the sword into my breast, *gladium in pectus mihi infigo*.
not yet, *nondum*.

to put away one's fears, *timorem ponere*.

EXERCISE 73

Pyramus and Thisbe (continued)

‘Very tragical mirth.’

But when she saw Pyramus lying on the sand, she embraced his beloved form and kissed his cold face, and cried aloud “O Pyramus, who has taken thee from me? O Pyramus, answer: thy Thisbe is calling thee: listen.” And he, hearing the name of Thisbe, opened his eyes which were now heavy with death, and at the moment of death he recognised his beloved. Then did the maiden see her cloak torn in pieces and Pyramus’ sword drawn from its sheath, and when she perceived that he had sought death for love of her, “Ah! luckless one,” she cried, “thy own hand undid thee and love of me. For me also is the hand and the love strong for this one end, and I who caused thy death will also share it: and thou, who by death alone wert torn from me, shalt not be torn from me even by death.” Thus she spoke, and drawing the sword from her lover’s breast she plunged it still warm into her own.

form, *corpus*.

take thee from me, *te mihi adimere*.

at the moment of death: a participle.

Omit ‘from its sheath.’

undo, *perdere*.

strong for this one end, *in hoc unum fortis*.

I who caused etc.: ‘I who was the cause of thy death will also be the partner (*comes*) of thy death.’

drawing the sword: use *extraho* (I pull or drag out).

still warm, *adhuc tepens*.

EXERCISE 74

‘ *The times are out of joint* ’

I have so far received one letter from you dated January 13th, in which you wrote that you sent me another letter before: this I did not receive. But I beg you to write to me as often as possible, not only if you know anything or hear anything, but even if you have a mere suspicion, and above all I beg you to write and tell me what you think I ought to do now or what I ought not to do. For as to your asking me to let you know what Pompeius is doing, I think that not even he himself knows; at any rate none of us knows. I saw the consul Lentulus at Formiae on January 22nd: whether he means to make a stand in Italy or to cross the water is not known. If

See 14 as to the tenses, 163-67 as to the Calendar.

so far, *adhuc* (hitherto, up till now).

dated: use *dare*. Our word ‘date’ comes from the past participle of *dare* in this way: to write and send a letter to a man is *dare epistulam ad aliquem*. At the beginning of the letter the writer would often introduce the day of the month in some such sentence as this: *a. d. vi. Kal. Febr. Capuam Calibus proficiscens has litteras dedi*, I write this on Jan. 27 as I start (in a carriage or litter) from Cales for Capua. Sometimes the writer puts at the end a shortened statement of the date: for instance *D. viii. Kal. Jun. Athenis*. This stands for *Dedi* or *Data est ante diem octavum Kalendas Junias Athenis*, Given this twenty-fifth day of May at Athens.

to have a mere suspicion, *susplicari*, often contrasted with having definite knowledge. Compare *Quid ageres, ubi terrarum esses ne suspicabar quidem*, I hadn’t even a suspicion (much less did I know) what you were doing, or where on earth you were.

above all, *maxime*.

as to your asking: see 162.

at any rate, *quidem*; arrange thus ‘of us at any rate no one.’

mean: use *volo*.

make a stand, *consistere*.

he remains, I fear he will not have a strong army : if on the other hand he goes away, I don't know where to go, which road to take, what to do. Labienus, a great man in my opinion, came to Teānum on January 24th. There he had an interview with Pompeius and the consuls. I will write and tell you what passed between them and what was done, when I know for certain. Already Labiēnus seems to have encouraged us a good deal. I should like to know what you think about the whole matter. Certainly I do not cease to urge them to peace : for peace even if unjust is more advantageous than the justest war with one's fellow-citizens. If Caesar withdraws his garrisons from the towns which he has seized outside his province, Pompeius will return to Rome and arrange a peace. Goodbye. February 2nd. Formiae.

if on the other hand, *sīn*.

where to go, which road to take : say 'whither or by what road I ought to go.'

what passed between them : say 'what their conversation was.'

to know for certain, *certum scire*.

He has encouraged us a good deal, *aliquantum animi nobis attulit*.
Certainly, *Equidem*.

I urge them to peace, *ad pacem hortor*.

even if unjust, *vel iniusta*.

outside the limits of his province, *extra provinciam*.

EXERCISE 75

‘*Citizens of no mean city*’

If among the Athenians men were not wanting to defend the common weal against the hasty action of the populace, though those who did so were in all cases banished; if the great Themistocles, the saviour of his country, was not deterred from defending the common weal either by the disastrous end of Miltiades, who a little while before had saved that state, nor by the banishment of Aristides, who according to tradition was of all men the most just; if in later times the greatest men of that same state (whom it is not necessary for me to mention by name), with so many examples before them of the fickleness of the populace,

among, *apud*.

‘the common weal or wealth,’ i.e. the good of the community (as opposed to *res privata*, the interests of the individual), *res publica*. *Publicus* (= *populicus*) comes from *populus*.

though those who did so were in all cases (*omnes*) etc.: this is an iterative sentence (see 54): it should begin with *cum* (= though), which will affect the mood of one of the verbs.

Aristīdēs, Miltiādēs make genitives in -i.

if the great Thēmistōclēs . . .: keep the clauses in the order of the English, but change the verb ‘deterred’ to the active: ‘if neither the disastrous end (*calamitas*) of Miltiades deterred Themistocles, nor the banishment of Aristides etc.’

‘the great’ may be rendered by *ille*.

according to tradition: use the verb *tradere* (to pass a story on): like *dico* it prefers the personal construction in the passive; see 110. Add the word *unus* to *omnium* to heighten the effect: *unus omnium iustissimus*.

in later times, *postea*.

the greatest men, *summi viri*.

mention by name, *nominatim appello*.

with so many examples before them: say ‘so many examples being set before them (*propono*).’

fickleness, *levitas*.

did nevertheless defend that commonwealth of theirs, what ought we, pray, to do, we who were born in the city in which greatness of soul had its origin, we who have set our hands to the task of protecting a commonwealth, which is of such excellent dignity that it is more honourable to fall in its defence than to win supreme power in an attack upon it ?

pray, *tandem*.

have origin : 'in which (*unde*, whence) it arose (*orior*).'

we who were born . . . : 'we who have set' : don't repeat the 'we,' but begin the clauses with *primum* and *deinde* respectively : 'in the first place having been born . . . in the second having set our hands.'

set our hands to the task of protecting : use a different metaphor in Latin : *ad-gredior ad tuendam rem publicam*.

such excellent dignity, *tanta dignitas*.

it is more honourable, etc. : imitate the following sentence : *satiùs est pugnare quam occidere quam superstitem vivere*, it is better to fall in the fight than to survive and be a slave. Compare 91.

I win supreme power, *rerum potior* (4).

EXERCISE 76

‘*Citizens of no mean city*’ (continued)

The Greeks whom I have named, who were unjustly condemned and banished by their fellow-citizens, have, nevertheless, because they deserved well of the state, won immortal fame. Of the Carthaginians who was of more account than Hannibal for his sagacity, his courage and his achievements? He was the one man to carry on the contest with all those generals of ours through all those years. He was banished by his fellow-citizens: we have given him, our enemy, a place of honour in our literature and our memories. Wherefore let us imitate Brutus, Camillus, Decius, Scipio, and countless others, who have established this commonwealth. Let us love our fatherland, let us obey the senate, let us reflect that the body of man is mortal, but that fame is everlasting.

of more account, *pluris*.

for his sagacity: *abl.*

He was the one man to say: ‘who alone (*unus*) carried on the contest (*decertāre*).’

all those, *tot*.

‘we have given him even though (*etiam*) our enemy.’

to give a place of honour in etc., *litteris et memoria celebrāre*.

EXERCISE 77

A letter home

On October 13 we reached Athens after a slow and troublesome voyage with the wind against us. As we disembarked Acastus was waiting for us with the letters. I received your letter, from which I gathered that you were afraid that your earlier letters had not been delivered to me. They were all delivered, and you took great care to tell me everything, of which I was very glad. Nor was I surprised that this letter which Acastus has brought was short. For by now you are expecting me myself, while I am longing to come to you: though I see in what a state I shall find the political world. For I have learned from the letters of many of my friends that things are tending towards war: so that, when I come, I shall not be allowed to conceal my views. But we must bear our lot. I wish you would come as far as you can to meet me. I hope, by the blessing of heaven, to be in Italy about November 13. Goodbye.—Athens, October 15.

Do not expect to find all the words in the dictionary; all that you need are there: see the first note to Ex. 59.

after a . . . voyage: say 'having had contrary winds and made a slow and troublesome voyage.' 'I have contrary winds,' *utor adversis ventis*.

He is waiting for me (i.e. standing ready for me), *praesto* (adverb) *est mihi*. earlier, *superior*.

you took great care etc.: say 'everything was most carefully written by you, and this (*id*) was most pleasing to me.'

you are expecting me, while I . . . : there is a slight emphasis on the word 'I,' which is rendered in the Latin by *quidem*: 'you are expecting me myself, who on my side (*qui quidem*) am longing.'

'though I see into what a *res publica* I am coming.'

things are tending etc., *ad arma res* (sing.) *spectat*.

to bear one's lot, *sub-ire fortunam*.

by the blessing of heaven: 'if the gods help.' about, *circiter*, acc.

EXERCISE 78

An unjust judge

If you still feel any doubt, gentlemen of the jury, that Manlius robbed his province, listen to what he did in the case of my friend Demetrius. When every one else was sending presents to the praetor in order the more easily to win his favour, he *though* a very rich man would give nothing. So this fellow got angry and ordered the man to be summoned to his presence, and said that one of his slaves had joined in a conspiracy and had incited other slaves *to revolt*; that this slave was the chief herdsman, Charmides by name: that he must at once be brought to him. When he heard this Demetrius declared that he had absolutely no slave of that name: and that he could not have a chief herdsman, because he had no herd

Before you do this piece study 33 as to *se* and *cum*.

If you still feel any doubt: when a negative is expressed or implied with *dubito*, it may be followed by *quin*. Here the sense of *Si dubitatis* is 'If you feel, and you surely do *not* feel, any doubt.' Compare this sentence from Cicero: 'Quod si quis dubitare adhuc potuit *quin* nulla societas huic ordini populoque Romano cum illa importunissima belua possit esse, desinet profecto dubitare his cognitis litteris.'

in the case of D., *in Dēmētrio*.

I win Caesar's favour, *Caesaris gratiam mihi concilio* (1).

this fellow, *iste* (he, the man over there), pointing at him in the court.

incite: use *concito* (1).

a herd of cattle, *pecus*, -*ŭris* n.

chief herdsman, *magister pecoris*.

declare, *affirmo* (1).

absolutely, *omnino*.

of that name: *abl*.

of cattle: that, if any of his slaves had joined in a conspiracy, he would even gladly have given him up: for to a man who possessed so many slaves a war with the slaves would be a great danger. Let the praetor come himself to his country-house, which was only two miles from the city, and choose as many slaves as he pleased for punishment.

give up, *trado*.

Oratio Recta 'If any of my slaves had joined in a conspiracy, I would even gladly have given him up (see 151). For *to one* who possesses so many slaves, to him a slave war will be a great danger. Come to my villa yourself etc.'

a war with the slaves, *servile bellum*.

for, i.e. with a view to, punishment, *ad supplicium*.

EXERCISE 79

An unjust judge (continued)

While he was saying this and shouting that he had done nothing, and committed no crime, the praetor ordered his lictors to drag the man away and throw him into prison. And so for two years this excellent man remained in prison, in the darkness, in the filth: nor was permission ever granted to any of his *friends* to approach the poor wretch. Yet as often as the defendant came to that town within those two years, so often did the senate approach him in suppliant fashion, begging and beseeching him that this unfortunate and innocent man might at last be set free. But he, touched neither by the prayers of the citizens, nor the sorrow of the father, nor the tears of the son, would not set him free, till he had bought back his freedom for a huge sum. For Demetrius, overpowered at last by all his terrible sufferings, had the money sent to Manlius. This done he was at once set free.

But this *story* is strange and perhaps seems scarcely credible to you. I will therefore call the witnesses: when you have heard them you will no longer hesitate to condemn him.

I have committed no crime, *nihil commisi*. lictor, *lictor*.

I drag away, *ab-ripio*. this excellent man, *vir honestissimus*.

the defendant, *iste*. as often as, *quotiens-cumque*. See 54.

(a period of) two years, *biennium*.

unfortunate: use *miser*. touched, *commotus*.

at last: use *aliquando* (=some time or other) or, stronger, *aliquando tandem*.

overpowered by all his terrible sufferings: say 'broken by so many and such great sufferings (*miseriae*).'

strange: use *novus*. no longer, *non iam*.

EXERCISE 80

An unjust judge (continued)

Gentlemen of the jury, you have now heard all the witnesses. From these virtuous citizens you have learned that Demetrius was thrown into prison without trial, that he also was suddenly released. Does any one among you think that the poor wretch had done anything to deserve punishment? I will not plead the cause of my friend Demetrius: I will say nothing of the man's virtues: I will pass over also the point, of which I spoke before, that a man who has no herd needs no chief herdsman: I will not even say that even if Demetrius was greatly in the wrong, still such severe measures ought not to have been taken without trial against an honourable citizen of an honourable state. I will leave all these *considerations on one side*; though if I chose to follow them up, I could easily show that by his own cruelty towards others he has closed against himself every approach to the pity of the jury.

to deserve punishment: 'I am doing nothing to deserve punishment,' *nihil facio quam ob rem poena iure afficiar* (I am doing nothing by reason of which I should with justice be punished). As to the relative with the subj. see 157.

I pass over the point, *illud praetermitto*.

I will not even say, *non dicam ne illud quidem*. Note these two instances of *illud* in apposition to a coming clause.

greatly in the wrong, *maxime in culpa*.

to take severe measures against him, *in eum graviter animadvertere*. follow up, *persequor*.

I close the approaches against myself, *aditus mihi praecludo* (*claudio*).

EXERCISE 81

An unjust judge (continued)

So I will pass over all these considerations ; for I foresee what line of defence he will take. He will admit that neither the advanced age of the father, nor the youthfulness of the son, nor the tears of both, had more weight with him than the interests and the safety of his province. He will tell us that the administration cannot be conducted without severity. He will ask us for what reason the fasces are carried by the lictors before the praetors, why axes are given them, why a prison is built, why so many punishments are appointed for the wicked by the custom of our ancestors. No doubt he will deny that the witnesses are to be believed. And when he has said all this, I shall ask him this one question: "Why did you set free the very man whom you had yourself condemned?"

I foresee, *praevideo*.

it has more weight with me, *plus valet apud me*.

interests, *utilitas* (sing.).

the administration is conducted, *res publica administratur*.

for what reason, *quam ob rem*.

the lictors carry the fasces before the praetor, *lictores praetori fasces praeferunt*.

to appoint a punishment for the wicked, *supplicium* (or *poenam*) *in improbos constituere*.

no doubt, *sine dubio*.

Why did you etc. : see 50.

And if he is silent, I shall ask you, gentlemen, if he has not been guilty of a twofold offence in the case of this one man: firstly, in that he condemned an innocent man, secondly, in that he released a condemned man.

I shall ask you if: do not use *si* to introduce an indirect question.
in the case of this man he has twice been guilty, *in hoc uno bis improbus fuit*.

in that, *quod* with subj. : compare the examples in 161.

EXERCISE 82

A traveller's tale

The night had now come: we were making our way through a dense forest, not knowing where we were going, and we could not find any hut in which to sleep. It seemed there was now no hope: we were beginning to look about for a place where we could lie down without danger of being attacked by lions, when Rufus said that he saw a light. A few minutes later we came to a small hut. In this hut lived the keeper of the royal forest and his wife, who

In this exercise a little less help is given than hitherto. Not all the words will be found in the dictionary: with a little thought the student who has done the earlier exercises will be able to find suitable words and phrases. For example, the Latin for 'we went on talking till late at night' has already occurred, but the English phrase by which it was translated was slightly different. Do not use the dictionary unless you are obliged, but try to supply the words from your own knowledge. For instance, you know the Latin for 'to have a good night' if you think what it means: if you were to look up the words in a dictionary you would probably write *bonam noctem habere*, which would be wrong. Do not forget that the connection between the sentences must be expressed in Latin; in the above passage several links have to be supplied. Many of the sentences, if translated literally, will not make satisfactory Latin: try to put them into a Latin form, i.e. to make them like Latin sentences which you know from the other exercises in this book or from your reading. For instance, look at the second sentence above, beginning 'It seemed there was now no hope.' If you translate it as it stands you will feel that there is something wrong with it in several places, especially in the piece 'when Rufus said.' If you think a minute you will see that the most important statement is 'Rufus said etc.': all the rest leads up to this: therefore get rid of the 'when' before 'Rufus said': make the other clauses subordinate and let *dixit* be the principal verb. The sentence will then take this form 'when there was no hope and we were looking etc. Rufus said etc.'

not knowing: use the adj. *nescius*.

hut, *cāsa*.

without danger of being attacked by, *tutus a* (safe from).

keeper, *custōs*, *-ōdis*.

gave us the kindly welcome of country-folk : their one object seemed to be that we should be satisfied with the food and have a good night. They took an eager delight in our conversation, for living in the midst of the forest they very seldom saw a fellow-creature in winter. So we went on talking till late at night and then at last went to bed. I was tired after the journey and had had a pretty good supper, so I fell into rather a heavy sleep.

he gives me the kindly welcome of country-people, *rustica benevolentia me accipit* (he receives me with rustic kindliness).

my one object is that . . ., *nihil mihi potius est quam ut . . .* (nothing is for me more important than that . . .).

satisfied, *contentus* (abl.).

I take an eager delight in, *cupide fruor* (abl.).

tired after a journey, *de via fessus*.

pretty good : 'pretty' in this sense is *satis*. In the same way we sometimes say 'good enough' and the French say *assez bon*.

We say 'I fall into a heavy sleep' : the Roman uses a different metaphor and says 'a close sleep wraps me round, embraces me,' *artus somnus me complectitur*.

EXERCISE 83

A traveller's tale (continued)

In the middle of the night, after we had been asleep for some hours, I seemed in a dream to be hearing the voices of people disputing: at first I did not recognise the voices of our host and hostess. But at last I was roused by the incessant complaints of the woman and began to hear what she was saying. "Don't do it" quoth she, weeping the while; "I beg and beseech you not to. Oh dear! what will become of us?" "You hold your tongue," came the angry answer, "don't bother me any more. You need have no doubt that I'm going to do it. It will be much better to kill them both. Didn't you notice that they are very rich men? Did you ever see such beautiful weapons?"

When I heard this I was alarmed and roused my friend, and said to him in a low voice "Don't speak: our hosts are going to murder us: I heard the wife begging her husband not to do it. So let us get ourselves ready to fight. Look, I have brought you your bow. I will hold mine ready to shoot. If any one opens that door I will shoot at him. If I don't hit him, you kill him."

some: meaning a good number, *aliquot*.

to dispute, *altercari*. host and hostess, *hospites*.

incessant complaints, *assiduæ querælae*.

Oh, dear! *Me miseram!* what will become of me? *Quid me fiet?* (*me* is abl., what will

be done with me?).

bother, *sollicitare*.

in a low voice, *submissâ voce* (sinking my voice). Look, *Ecce*.

I hold a bow ready to shoot, *arcum intentum* (stretched) *habeo*.

I shoot at him, *sagittam in eum emitto* (I send an arrow at him).

hit: use *configo* (to transfix).

EXERCISE 84

A traveller's tale (continued)

"I will do as you say," said he. "We don't know how many there are of them, but unless they attack us on both sides there is not much risk."

So we kept awake for three hours without hearing another word. Meanwhile in the next room our hosts seemed to be sleeping peacefully and even snoring. Not to make a long story, when it got light we went to sleep too. When we got up we went down not without our weapons, and found a magnificent meal ready. The man brought two chickens, and said "Good morning, gentlemen; I hope you have had a good night. Look at these two chickens: my wife and I had a dispute about them: she didn't want to kill them both. But I said that as you had made a long journey you would be able to eat hundreds. However, we had only two." When we heard this, it was as much as we could do to keep from laughing.

how many are there of you? *quot estis?*

side: use *pars*. word, *vox*.

room (= bedroom), *cubiculum*. and even, *atque adeo*.

Not to make a long story, *ne multa* (*dicam* or some other verb is understood).

it gets light, *illūciscit*, (3) *illuxit*.

get up, *surgo*. go down, *descendo*.

we found a magnificent meal ready: say 'we were entertained (use *accipio*) with a magnificence fit for a king, or with royal state' (*regio apparatus*; *apparatus*, literally 'preparation,' is used especially of the provision of splendid banquets; hence it comes to mean 'splendour, state').

Look, *Ecce* and *acc*. chicken, *pullus* (*poulet* in French).

Good morning, *Salvete* (imper. of *salvare*, to be safe and well).

gentlemen, *domini*.

hundreds (= any number however large), *sescenti* (600).

it was as much as we could do: express by *vix aut ne vix quidem* (scarcely or not even scarcely, scarcely if at all).

I keep from laughing, *risum teneo*.

EXERCISE 85

From a Roman governor

On receipt of this information I thought it best to march through Cappadocia: for there was a strong suspicion that, if the Parthians tried to make their way out of Syria and make an inroad into my province, they would march through Cappadocia as that country was specially open *to attack*. So I marched into Cappadocia and pitched my camp near Cistra, a town near the Taurus range, in order that the Armenian king might know that a Roman army was not far from his frontier, and that I might have our faithful friend King Deiotarus as near me as possible, and might have the assistance of his counsel and resources. Having made up my mind to stay a few days there I sent my cavalry into Cilicia, that my arrival being reported to the neighbouring states might reassure every one, and that I might get early information as to what was going on in Syria.

make their way: use *egredior*.

make an inroad, *in-rumpere* (to break into).

a town near: say 'which town is near mount Taurus.' The relative and verb are necessary for this reason: in English we say 'the men in the ship,' 'the people there'; that is to say we treat adverbs and adverbial expressions as adjectives (so in Greek *οἱ ἐν τῇ νηί, οἱ ἐκεῖ*). This is not done in Latin, except under certain conditions; we must therefore introduce a verb to support the adverb 'there' or the adverbial expression 'in the ship': *Qui in nave sunt, Qui ibi habitant*.

Armenian, *Armēnius*.

our faithful friend etc.: say 'Deiotarus the very faithful king and very friendly to our interests' (*rei publicae nostrae*). Superlatives are used in Latin very freely.

as near me as possible, *maxime con-iunctus*.

might have the assistance of, *ad-iuvare possem* (might be helped by).

EXERCISE 86

From a Roman governor (continued)

As the senate had commanded me to watch over Ariobarzanes and to protect the king and his kingdom, and had added that the safety of the said king was a matter of great importance to the senate and people of Rome, I thought it my duty to summon his majesty to my presence and promise him my protection, so that, inasmuch as his safety and the security of his kingdom had been commended to my care, he might make any communication to me that he wished. He came to the camp, and having expressed his great gratitude to the senate, he told me that he did not believe that plots were being made against his life or his throne. I congratulated him, and told him that I rejoiced to hear this: at the same time I urged the young man to remember his father's end and to take measures to secure his own safety: whereupon he left me and went into the town of Cistra.

Āriōbarzānēs.

the said king: 'that king.'

it is a matter of great importance to me, *magnae curae est mihi*.

communication: *dic si quid vis* make any communication to me that you want to (literally, say if you want to say anything).

He came to the camp etc.: say 'when he had come to the camp and had expressed etc.' Similarly the next sentence will run 'When I had congratulated him and told him etc., then he left me . . .' Note that the shorter sentences sound better in English; in Latin they would produce a jerky effect not suited to the formal style of the passage. In Latin, also, there is no objection to the repetition of *cum*.

father's end: use *interitus*, a substantive from *intereo*=I perish; *interficio*=I bring to destruction, *intereo*=I come to destruction.

EXERCISE 87

(From a Roman governor continued)

On the following day he came to me in the camp accompanied by his brother and the friends of his father, men of some age, and with tears began to implore my protection. On my asking what had happened, he told me that he had received information that certain persons wanted to take his life and make his brother king: that his brother, who was very much attached to him, had not dared to say this before my arrival for fear of the risk: he had told them that he could not accept the kingdom in his brother's lifetime. When he told me this I advised his majesty to use all diligence in protecting his person, and I urged his friends to take a lesson from his father's untimely end and guard their king with all care. His majesty pressed me to give him a troop of cavalry from my army, but I answered that I must lead my whole army at once into Cilicia, and as it seemed to me that, now the plot was disclosed, the king had no need of a Roman army but could defend

friends of his father, men of some age: *paterni amici maiores natu*. See 33-35 on *se* and *eum*. Do the Oratio recta first.

very much attached to me, *amantissimus mei*.

for fear, *propter metum*.

I use all diligence in protecting my person, *omnem diligentiam ad me conservandum adhibeo*.

to take a lesson etc.: say 'taught by the father's untimely end (*acerbissimo casu*) to guard etc.'

pressed me to give etc., *postulo equitatum de exercitu*.

himself with his own resources, I urged him to condemn the men to death who had plotted against him: to punish those whom it was necessary to punish and to release the rest from fear: every one would see that if there were any need I should protect the king. Having thus reassured him, I moved my camp from there and set about my journey into Cilicia.

I reassure him, *confirmo illum*.

from there: 'from that place.'

set about my journey, *iter facere instituo*.

EXERCISE 88

From our special correspondent

When he learned the state of affairs, Mr. C. R. came to the General and offered to go into the country of the Matabēlii to arrange a peace. The General having given his permission, he set off the same evening, and on the following morning he reached Mount Amānus, on which, as I said above, is the encampment of the enemy. Now, when they saw an Englishman climbing the hill alone and unarmed, they were at first speechless with astonishment: afterwards, when they had collected their wits, they began to ask one another what could be the man's intention that he voluntarily put himself in a perilous position. There were even some who recommended that the man should be put to death without delay. But the king, who was a sensible man, gave orders that no one should leave the encampment: if the English chose to

Mr. C. R., *Marcus Caecilius Rhōdius*.

'offered' here means 'said he was willing to go.'

the same evening: 'the same day in the evening.'

He is speechless with astonishment, *admiratus stupet*. Note that the past not the present participle is used. Cp. 79. *Stupeo* means not 'I am stupid' but 'I stand still, I am struck senseless' (with amazement, terror, and the like).

began to ask: use the imperfect.

what could be the man's intention etc.: imitate this sentence, *Quo tandem consilio ultro te periculo offers?* What can be your intention that you voluntarily etc.? (literally, With what intention, pray, do you voluntarily put yourself in the way of danger?). *tandem* denotes an impatient desire to have the question answered: the same eagerness may be expressed by turning the sentence with 'could' in English.

send them a hostage, it was foolish not to receive him. If they put such a distinguished man to death, did they suppose the English would let his murder go unpunished?

mortem eius inultam esse patiuntur, they let his murder go unpunished (they suffer his death to be unavenged).

EXERCISE 89

From our special correspondent (continued)

So he was brought to the king and questioned as to what he wanted. He replied that he wanted to make peace. He had been informed that the Matabelii, having sustained so many defeats at our hands, wished to acknowledge British supremacy. This being the case he had made up his mind that it was for him, who had known the Matabelii for so many years, to come into their territory in order to make peace. He was the friend of the Matabelii, and he had no doubt that he had their permission to come to their camp when he chose.

On hearing this the king answered that he and his people had not only long wished to make peace, nay, they would gladly surrender their arms to him, if he would protect the Matabelii. As to their having as yet not sent hostages, they had been afraid that the British would return to their own country when they had made peace, and that they would not be able to resist the Bătăvi, who had always been hostile to them. So great were the wrongs done to the Matabelii by the Batavi that they preferred to suffer any *hardship* rather than yield to them. If, however, he would remain in Africa and protect the Matabelii, they would give up their arms.

sustain defeats etc. : use *vinco*.

who had known the M. : it may be convenient to change this to the passive 'to whom the M. had been known.'

nay, *sed etiam*.

as to their having : see 162.

EXERCISE 90

From our special correspondent (continued)

Mr. R. said that from the Batavi there was nothing to fear: the safety of the Matabelii and the security of their king had been committed to his care by the Queen of England: he would not leave Africa before he had made their position safe. Accordingly he asked them this one question, Did they wish for peace or war? Thereupon the king called the leading men to him and for a while they talked together: then they all came to Mr. R. and threw down their arms at his feet, that they might by so doing give him to understand that they wished for peace: at the same time they begged him earnestly to protect them and not to leave them to be preyed on by the Batavi.

Thereupon he said that he accepted their surrender. As to their assertion that they had been wronged by the Batavi, let them not forget what great wrongs they themselves had done to the English: the war had been carried on by treachery not by valour; the wives and children of Englishmen had been murdered. Those who had done these acts must be punished, the rest would be forgiven.

for a while, *paulisper*.

talked together: 'talked to one another.'

that they might by so doing, *quibus abiectis* (that by throwing them down); see 156.

give him to understand: use *significare* (to show by signs).

they earnestly beg, *supplices orant* (to be followed by *ut . . . ne-ve* and not . . .).

EXERCISE 91

From our special correspondent (continued)

It is thought that the war is now finished. Some, however, think that the Matabelii are not to be trusted: they are secretly the friends of the Batavi, *people say*; they dare not openly be on friendly terms with them, because they think that, if they pretend to be hostile, they will be given permission to retain their arms: these arms are being kept not for the Batavi but for the British. The kings of the Batavi and the Matabelii intend, *so it is said*, to drive all the British out of Africa. There are a good many who say this kind of thing: for my own part I do not think they should be believed. Meanwhile, there is no one who does not praise the courage of Mr. R.

I give you permission (to go), *potestatem tibi facio (eundi)*.

keep, *reservare*.

for the Batavi: dative.

a good many: 'not a few.'

this kind of thing, *haec et talia*.

for my own part I, *equidem*.

NOTE ON THE MARKING OF THE QUANTITIES

ON the following pages the quantities are marked systematically.

1. The vowels marked are long by nature, and should be pronounced long.
2. The unmarked vowels are short by nature, and should be pronounced short.
3. The diphthongs are long : they are not marked.

Do not confuse 'long by nature' and 'long by position.' A syllable is said to be long by position in which a naturally short vowel is followed by two consonants. For instance, the *e* of *per* is short, but the first syllable of *perdō* is long by position, i.e., in a verse it is scanned as a long syllable. This length by position is of no importance to us here.

The more advanced student should see an interesting passage in Cicero (*Orator* XLVIII.) in which he tells us that *in-* and *con-* were pronounced long before *s* or *f* but not before other letters : hence—

| | | |
|------------------|-----|-------------------|
| <i>infēlix</i> | but | <i>indoctus</i> |
| <i>insānus</i> | „ | <i>composuit</i> |
| <i>cōnsuēvit</i> | „ | <i>concrepuit</i> |
| <i>cōnfēcit</i> | „ | |

It seems that a vowel before *ns*, *nf*, was always long by nature, i.e., was pronounced long.

There is not always evidence to show whether a vowel was long or short : in case of doubt I have left the vowel unmarked. I have been guided chiefly by Lindsay, *The Latin Language* (Clarendon Press) ; and Seelmann, *Die Aussprache des Latein*.

ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY

The long vowels are marked.

Abandon, *relinquere*.

able, *possum*.

about: 1. (= concerning), *dē: dē bellō loquī*, to talk about the war.

2. (= nearly), *ferē*: about ten, *decem ferē*; at about the same time, *eōdem ferē tempore*.

above, *suprā*.

abroad, *forīs* (= out of doors).

absence, use the participle *absēns*: he condemned me in my absence, *mē absentem condemnāvit*.

accept, *accipiō*.

accomplish, *faciō, efficiō*.

accordingly, *itaque* (= and so, and in this way); *igitur* (= therefore; follows first word of its sentence); *quā rē* (= wherefore): use *proinde* with imperatives, and in exhortations, appeals, etc.

accuse, *accūsāre*.

accustomed, to be, *solēre*.

achievements, *rēs gestae*.

acquit, *absolvere*: to acquit of a capital offence, *capitis absolvere*.

act, *agō*.

add, *adiungere*.

admiral, *imperātor*.

admire, *admīrārī*.

admit, *fatērī*.

adorn, *ōrnāre*.

advance, *prōgredi*.

advantageous, *ūtilis*.

advise, give advice. See **warn**.

affairs, state of affairs, *rēs*.

afraid, I am or feel, *timeō, vereor, metuō*.

1. I am afraid to go, *Timeō ire* (= *tīmōre mōtus nōlō ire*, owing to fear I don't want to go). See 103.

2. (a) I am afraid that he will do it, *or* that he is doing it, *Timeō nē faciat*¹ (I fear lest he may do it).

(b) I am afraid that he will not do it, *or* that he is not doing

¹ The construction probably originates thus: the sentence *Timeō nē faciat*, for example, was once two sentences. *Timeō* (I feel afraid): *nē faciat*! (Oh that he may not do it!). *Nē faciat* expressed a wish, and *timeō* formed a separate sentence: it is easy to understand how in time the two sentences were fused into one. Similarly, *Vereor ut faciat* originates from *vereor*: *ut faciat* (Oh that he may do it). Compare the wish sentences (130) in which *utī-nam*, a longer form of *ut*, is used.

The long vowels are marked.

it, *Timeō nē nōn faciat* or *Vereor ut faciat* (I fear as to how he may do it); I was afraid that he had not told you, that you were ignorant, *Timebam nē tibi nōn dixisset, nē ignōrārēs.*

NOTE.—If the verb of fearing is negated *ut* is not used but *nē nōn*: *nōn vereor nē nōn faciat.*

after: 1. preposition or adverb, *post*: after three days, *post trēs diēs*; and not long after, *neque multō post.*

2. conj., *postquam, posteaquam*, generally used with perfect, see 60. But after he had departed I found that this was true, *postea vērō quam discēssit intellēxi id vērum esse*; the day after, *postrīdiē quam*; the day after he had brought me this news I started, *postrīdiē quam id mihi nūntiāvit, profectus sum.*

against, *contrā*, acc.

age, old age, advanced age, *senectūs, -ūtis.*

aid, *auxilium*; I come to your aid, *auxiliō tibi veniō*: *subveniō tibi.*

Alexander, *Alexander, -drī.*

all, *omnis.*

allow: 1. I allow you to go (= I give you leave), *potes-tātem tibi faciō eundē.*

2. to suffer a man to do a thing (i.e. not to prevent it), use *patior.*

Illī tē vivum exire passi sunt. They allowed you to escape alive.

3. I am allowed, *licet mihi.*

I ask to be allowed to speak, I ask for permission to speak, *Petō ut liceat mihi loquī.*

ally, *socius.*

almost, *ferē*: *cotīdiē ferē*, almost every day; *omnēs ferē*, almost every one: with verbs, *paene*; *paene dēlētum est*, it was almost destroyed.

alone, *sōlus.*

already, *iam.*

also, when possible use the pronoun *idem*, as shown in 48; otherwise use *quoque* or *etiam*. *Quoque* follows the word to which it belongs.

always, *semper.*

among, *apud*, acc.

amuse, *dēlectāre.*

ancestors, *māiōrēs.*

ancient, *vetus*, gen. *veteris.*

angry: I am, or I get angry with you, *irāscor tibi.*

another, *alter*,¹ *alius*. Do not use *alius* in gen. or dat. sing.

another (one), see 49.

answer, to, or make answer, *respondēre*: you make me no answer, *nihil mihi respondēs*: *rescribere* (= to write back).

¹ *Alter* means one of two, a fellow-creature, one's neighbour: to take another man's life, *alteri vitam eripere*; *alius* means different: different people like different things (some like one thing, some another), *alii alia amant.*

The long vowels are marked.

Antioch, *Antiochēa*.

anxiety, *sollicitūdō*, -*inis*.

any, anybody, anywhere, etc.

See 40, 41, 42.

appear, *vidēri*.

appoint, *nōmināre*; an appointed day, *cōstitutā diēs*, an appointed place, *cōstitutus locus*.

approach, to, *adire* (*ad*); noun, *adventus* (4).

arise, *urgere*.

Aristides, *Aristīdēs*, gen. -*i*.

arms, *arma*.

army, *exercitus* (4).

arrange, *cōstituere*.

arrival, generally expressed by the verb *veniō*; noun, *adventus* (4).

arrive, *veniō*.

He arrived at Rome, *Rōmam vēnit*; he arrived at the city, *ad urbem vēnit*; when he arrived there, *quō cum vēnisset*.

art, *ars*.

as to: 1. prep. (= with reference to, concerning), *dē*.

2. 'as to' may introduce an indirect question: he was questioned as to what he had done, *quid fēcisset interrogātus est*.

3. 'as to your assertion,' 'as to my having attached,' etc., see 162.

ascertain, *cognōscere*.

ask (= try to find out), *quaerere*: he asked me who had done it, *ex mē quaesivit quis*

fēcisset; he was asked why he did it, *ex eō quaesitum est cūr fēcisset*; ask for, *petere*: he asked me for money, *pecūniam ā mē petiit*; I ask you to come, *rogō tē ut veniās*. See 10.

asleep, to be, *dormire*.

assault, *impetus* (4).

assert, *dicere*.

assistance, see *aid*.

Athenian, *Athēniēnsis*.

Athens, *Athēnae*.

attack, noun, *impetus* (4): to resist or withstand an attack, *impetum sustinere*.

attack, to, *adoriri*, *oppugnare*.

Adorior from *orior*, I rise, means I spring out upon, I make an unexpected attack upon, I try to surprise the enemy: *oppugnō* is used of a more elaborate assault, as of attacking a town with artillery; hence *hostēs ā tergō adortus est*, He attacked the enemy in rear; *hostēs dormientēs adortus est*, He surprised them while asleep. Contrast *aggeribus*, *vīneis*, *turribus oppugnābam oppidum*.

attempt, to, *cōnārī*. See 103.

audacity, *audācia*.

avoid, *vītare*, *fugere*.

awake, to, *expergīscī*; to stay awake, keep awake, *vigilāre*.

away, to be, *abesse*.

axe, *secūris*.

Back, *tergum*; to come back, or get back, *redire*.

The long vowels are marked.

band, *manus*.

banish, *expellere*, *ē* *civitate*
ē-icere.

banishment, *fuga*.

bank, *rīpa*.

barbarian, *barbarus*.

bathe, to, *lavārī*.

battle, *praelium*, *pugna*.

bear, *ferō*.

beast, *bēlua*.

beat (= overcome, conquer),
vincere, *superāre*.

beautiful, *pulcher*.

beauty, *pulchritūdō*, *-inis*,
fōrma.

because, see 159.

become, *fieri*.

bed, *lētus*: I go away to bed,
cubitum discēdō (*cubitum* is
the supine of *cubāre*, to lie
down).

before, prep., *ante*, acc.; *ante*
tuum adventum, before your
arrival.

adv., *ante*, *anteā*; a little
while before, *paulō ante*; long
before, *multō ante*.

conj., *ante quam*, *prius*
quam; before he returned,
prius quam rediit. See 60,
61.

beg: *beg for*, *orāre*; *beg and*
beseech, *orāre atque obsecrāre*.

I *beg for help*, *auxilium orō*; I
beg you to come, *orō tē ut veniās*;
I *beg you not to come*, *orō tē nē*
veniās.

begin, I, *coepī* (pft. = (1) I have
made a beginning, I am now

beginning, (2) I did make a
beginning, I began).

behind, from behind, *ā tergō*.

believe, *crēdere*.

beloved, *amātus*, *cārus*.

beseech, see *beg*.

besiege, *obsidēre*.

best, *optimus*; **better**, *melior*.

The gerund or gerundive
will often translate 'better'
and 'best': I thought I had
better wait, or, I thought it
best to wait, *expectandum*
esse putāvī. See 89.

bid, *iubēre*: I bade him fare-
well, *iussī eum valēre*.

blame, to, *culpāre*.

blood, *sanguis*, *-inis*, m.

body, *corpus*, *-oris*.

bombard, *per vim expugnāre*.

book, *liber*.

booty, *praeda*.

born, to be, *nāsci*.

both: 1. both the boy and
the girl, *et puer et puella*.

2. both of the boys did it,
puer uterque fecit; both girls
did it, *puella utraque fecit*.

N.B. We say 'both boys' (pl.),
the Latin is 'either boy' (sing.);
uterque makes gen. *utriusque*,
dat. *utrique*.

boundary, *fīnēs* (pl. of *fīnis*,
m.).

boy, *puer*.

brave, *fortis*.

break, *frangere*; break a
treaty, *violāre foedus*.

breast, *pectus*, *-oris*.

The long vowels are marked.

bridge, *pōns, pontis* (gender of *fōns, mōns, pōns*?).

bring: 1. (= to carry), *adferō* or *afferō*: bring back, *referō*.
2. (= to lead in), *adducō, ducō*.

Britain, *Britannia*; Britons, the British, *Britannī*; the British Ambassador, *lēgātus Britannicus*.

brother, *frāter*.

build, *aedificāre*.

burn (= set on fire), *incendere*.

but, *autem, sed, at, vērō*. *Sed* and *at* begin a sentence, *autem* and *vērō* come after the first word or two.

buy, *emere*; buy back, *red-imere*.

Call: 1. *vocāre*: I called him to me, *eum ad mē vocāvī*.

2. *appellāre*: we will call him king, *rēgem eum appellābimus*.

3. call on, go to call on a friend, *convenire amicum*.

camp, *castra*, pl.: to pitch a camp, *castra pōnere* or *facere*.

can, *possum*.

capture, use *capiō*.

care, *cūra*; vb. *cūrāre*.

It is an object of care to me, *cūrae est mihi*.

Take care that you do it, *cūrā ut faciās*.

They don't care what we do, *quid nōs agāmus nōn cūrant* (or *nōn laborant*, they don't trouble themselves).

carefully, *diligenter*, superl.

diligentissimē: not very carefully, *parum diligenter*.

carry, *ferō*; carry off, *auferō*; carry on war, *gerō bellum*; carry across, *transportāre*.

Carthage, *Karthāgō*; Carthaginian, *Karthāginiēnsis*.

Catiline, *Catilīna*.

Cato, *Catō*, -ōnis.

cause, *causa*: to plead a cause, *causam defendere*.

cavalry (force, troop, body of cavalry), *equitātus* (4), *equitēs*.

cease, *dēsīnere, dēsistere*.

certain, a certain person, *quidam*; to know for certain, *certum scīre*; certainly, *certē*.

chapel, *sacellum*.

charge (= order), *praecipio*: I charge you to do it, *praecipio tibi ut faciās*; not to do it, *nē faciās*.

check, *impedire*: I check him from coming, *impediō eum quō minus veniat*.

chief, *rēx*.

child, *puer*; children, *liberī*.

choose (= wish), *volō*; (= pick out), *ēligere, deligere*.

citadel, *arx, arcis*.

citizen, *civis*.

city, *urbs*.

clever, *sapiēns*.

climb up a mountain, (*in*) *montem ascendere*.

cloak, *pallium*.

clothes, *vestis* (use the sing.).

cohort, *cohors* (a cohort consisted of 600 men).

The long vowels are marked.

cold, *frīgīdus, gelīdus*.

collect, *cōgere*: I collect myself,
or I collect my wits, *mē colligō* (3).

come, *veniō*; come together,
conveniō; come back, *redeō*;
come in, *intrō*.

coming, the, *adventus* (4); often
expressed by a verb.

command: 1. (= to order),
imperāre, dat.

He orders me to go away, *imperat
mihi ut discēdam*.

2. (= to be in command of),
prae-esse, dat.

He is in command of the army,
exercitui prae-est.

3. to place him in command
of the army, *eum exercitui
prae-ficere*.

commander - in - chief, *im-
perātor*.

commend, *commendāre*.

commit: I commit him to
your care, *commendō* (1) *eum
tibi* (I commend him to
you).

common, *commūnis*.

companion, *comes, -itis*.

compel, *cōgere*.

complain, *querī*.

conceal, *dissimulare*.

condemn, *damnāre*; condemn
to death, *capitis damnāre*.

conduct, *dūcere*.

congratulate, *grātulārī*, dat.

conquer, *vincere*.

consider, *exīstimāre*. "Con-
sidering that" may often be
translated by *cum*. See 68.

considerable: a considerable
reward, *aliquantum praemiī*.

conspiracy, to join in, enter
into a, *coniūrāre*.

consul, *cōsul, -ulis*.

consult, *cōsulere*.

contest, to carry on a, *dēcertāre*.

conversation, *sermō, -ōnis*.

corn, *frūmentum*.

council, *concilium*.

counsel, *cōsilium*.

countless, *innumerābilis*.

country: 1. country as op-
posed to town, *rūs, rūris*.

He went into the country, *rūs abiit*.
He is in the country, *rūrī est*.

2. (= fatherland), *patria*.

To die for one's country, *pro patriā
morī*.

3. (= a land), *terra*; some-
times *finēs* (= borders).

The country of France, *terra
Gallia*.

To march into the enemy's country,
in hostium finēs iter facere.

country-house, *villa*.

courage, *virtūs, -ūtis*: to take
courage, use *audēre*.

cowardly, *timidus*.

crack, *rīma*.

credible, *crēdibilis*.

cross (over), *trāns-eō, trā-iciō
(iaciō)*.

crown, *corōna*.

crucify, *in crucem tollere*.

The long vowels are marked.

cruel, *crūdēlis*: cruelty (to-wards him), *crūdēlitas* (in eum).

cruiser, *nāvis longa*.

crush, *comprimere*.

cry (=shed tears), *lacrimāre*; cry aloud, shout, *clāmāre*.

custom, *mōs*: in accordance with my custom, *mōre meō*.

cut, cut off, *interclūdere*; from flight, *fugā*; from the rest, *ā reliquīs*; cut their way through the enemy (to break through), *per hostēs ē-rumpere*; cut (a thing) in two, cut (it) through, *dī-scindere*.

Danger, *periculum*.

dare, *audēre*; daring spirit, *audācia*.

dark, *obscurus*.

darkness, *tenebrae*.

daughter, *filia*; little daughter, *filiola*.

day, *diēs*; every day, *cotīdiē*; in, within a few days, see Sect. 1; at dawn of day, *prīmā lūce*.

dead, *mortuus*.

dear, *cārus*: our dear Tullius, *Tullius noster*.

death, *mors*.

deceive, *dēcipiō*.

decide, *statuere*. See 105 (iv).

declare, *pronūntiāre*.

deed, *factum*.

deep, *altus*.

defend, *dēfendere*. What is your defence? or, What line

of defence do you take? *Quid dēfendis?*

delay, to, *morārī*: without delay, *confestim* (adv.).

deliver (a letter to him), *reddere* (*litterās eī*).

demand, *postulāre*.

dense, *dēnsus*.

deny, *negāre*.

depend: everything depends on victory, *omnia in victoriā posita sunt*; our safety depends on our courage, *in virtute posita est salūs*.

descend (from), *dēscendere* (*dē*).

desert, *dēserere*.

deserter, *perfuga*.

deserve, *merērī*: to deserve well of us, *dē nobīs bene merērī*.

desire, be desirous, *cupiō*.

desolation, *vāstitās*, *-ātis*.

despair, to, be in despair, *dēspērāre*.

destroy, *dēlēre*.

deter, *dē-terrēre*: to deter him from laying the country waste, *ā vāstandīs agrīs eum dēterrēre*.

determine, *statuere*. See 103, 105.

devour, *vorāre*.

dictator, *dictātor*, *-ōris*.

die, *moriōr*, *per-eō*.

different, *alius*.

difficult, *difficilis*, superl. *difficillimus*.

difficulty, with, scarcely, *vix*; *aegrē*, superl. *aegerrimē*.

The long vowels are marked.

dinner, *cēna*; **dine**, have dinner, *cēnāre*, pf. *cēnāvī*, deponent pf. pteple. *cēnātus*, having dined; to have dinner prepared, see 86.

disclose, *pate-faciō*.

discover, *comperīre* (= find); *cognōscō* (= get to know).

disembark, *dē nāve exīre*.

disgraceful, *turpis*.

dismiss, *dīmītere*.

distance: I am at a distance of one day's march, *absum iter ūnūs diēi*; of two days' march, *bīduī iter*.

distinguished, *clārus*.

district, *regiō*, *-ōnis*.

disturbance, *tumultus*; to cause a disturbance, *tumultum excitāre*.

ditch, *fossa*.

do, *agere*, *facere*.

doctor, *medicus*.

dog, *canis*.

dominion, *dominātus* (4).

door: 1. (= doorway), *iānuā*.

2. (= the actual door), *foris*, or pl. *forēs*: I shut my bedroom door, *forem cubiculī claudō*.

doubt (vb. *dubitāre*; adj. *dubius*): to be or feel doubtful, have doubt, *dubitāre*; is it doubtful to you? *num tibi dubium est?*

Construction (see also 103, 105).

(a) *Indirect Question*:

Dubitō quid sit faciendum, I feel doubtful (as to) what should be done, I feel doubtful what to do.

(b) *quīn* (only after a negative¹):

Nōn dubitō quīn ita sit, I have no doubt that it is so.

draw a sword, *gladium stringere*.

dream, *somnium*; in a dream, *in somnīs*.

drink, *bibere*; drink a great draught of water, *multam aquam bibere*.

drive back (the enemy), *re-iciō* (*hostes*); drive out, *expellere*.

duty, use gerund or gerundive, see 89; or *dēbeo*.

Each, see 46.

eagerly, *ācrīter* or *ācerrimē*.

early, *mātūrē*; too early, *mātūrius*.

earth, *terra*.

easy, *facilis*, *facilior*, *facillimus*; adv. *facile*.

effect, *efficere*.

either: either this or that, *aut hōc aut illud*.

elder, *māior nātū*.

embark on a ship, *in nāvem cōnscondere*.

embrace, *complectī*.

encamp, *castra facere*; encampment, *castra*.

encourage, *adhortāri*.

endure, *per-petior*.

¹ The negative may be implied: *Nūm dubitās?* You, surely, do not doubt?

The long vowels are marked.

enemy, *hostis*, generally used in the plural: a private enemy, *inimicus* [from *amicus*].
engaged, to be, in, *interesse*, dat.

engine, *tormentum*.

England, *Britannia*; Englishmen, the English, *Britannī*; adj. *Britannicus*.

enough, *satis*.

Enough corn for a month, *satis frumentī in mensem*; enough wood for making a bridge, *satis lignī ad pontem faciendum*.

enter, *intrāre*, *ingredi*.

envious, *invidus*.

envoy, *lēgātus*.

err, *errāre*.

escape, *fugiō*, *effugiō*.

even, *etiam*; not even, *nē . . . quidem*; even though, *etiam sī*.

Not even for the sake of a friend ought we to lie, *nē amīcī quidem causā mentīrī debēmus*; even though he is said to be my friend, still he stirs up ill-feeling against me, *etiam sī mihi amīcus esse dicitur, tamen invidiam mihi cōnflat*.

evening, *vesper*; in the evening, *vespere* or *vesperī*; on the following evening, *postridiē vespere*.

everlasting, *sempiternus*.

every, *omnis*; every one, *omnēs*; every thing, *omnia*; every day, *cotīdiē*.

example, *exemplum*.

excellent, *optimus*.

exclaim, *clāmāre*.

expect, *expectāre*.

extortion, to accuse him of, *accūsāre eum dē pecūniīs reptundīs*.

eye, *oculus*.

Face, *vultus*.

faithful, *fidēlis*.

fall, *cadere*; (= to die), *occidere*.

fame, *glōria*.

famous, *nōbilis*.

far, *procul*, *longē* (*longius*, *longissimē*).

farewell, *valē*, the imperative of *valēre*, to be well; I bid you farewell, *iubeō tē valēre*.

fast, *celer*; superl. *celerrimus*.

father, *pater*.

fatherland, *patria*.

fear, *timor*, *metus*: vb., see **afraid**.

feed, *pāscere*.

feel, *sentīre*.

fellow-citizen, *cīvis*.

few, *paucī*; how few, *quam paucī*.

field, *ager*.

fight: vb. *pugnāre*, *praeliārī*; noun, *pugna*, *praelium*.

filth, *squalor*, *-ōris*.

find, *reperīre*, *in-venīre* (to come upon); find out, *cognōscere*.

fine: it is a fine (glorious) thing, *praeclārum est*.

finish (off), *cōnficiō*.

fire, *ignis*; to be on fire, *flagrāre*.

first, *primus*: he was the first

The long vowels are marked.

to say it, *prīmus dīcit* ; at first, *prīmō, prīmō quidem* (= at first indeed), often followed by *deīnde* (then, afterwards), or *postrēmō* (= at last) ; firstly, *prīmum* ; secondly, *deīnde*.

fitted, *aptus*.

flee, see *fly*.

fleet, *clāssis*.

flight, *fuga*.

flog, *virgīs caedere* (to beat with rods).

fly, *fugiō*.

foe, see *enemy*.

follow, *sequī* ; follow up, *persequī* ; on the following day, *posterō diē* or *postrīdiē*.

food, *cibus*.

foolish, *stultus*.

foot, *pēs, pedis* : the foot of the mountain, *imūs mōns*.

for, conj., *enī*m (following the first word of the sentence), *nam*.

For there was a strong suspicion, *Erat enī magna suspīciō*.

prep. (= on behalf of), *prō* ; to die for one's country, *prō patriā morī* ; (= on account of), *propter*, for fear, *proptermetum*.

forbid, *vetāre*.

force, forces, *cōpiae, exercitus*.

foresee, *prōvidēre*.

forest, *silva*.

foretell, *praedicere*.

forget, *oblīvīscī*.

forgive, *ignōscere*, dat., *veniam dare*, dat. ; forgiveness, *venia*.

former, *prior*.

fort, *castra* ; strongly built fort, *mūnīta castra*.

fortify, *mūnīre* ; very well (or strongly) fortified, *mūnītissimus*.

fortunate, *fēlix*.

free, *liber*, -a, -um ; to set free (from), *liberāre* (ab).

freedom, *libertās*.

French, the, *Gallī* ; in French, *Gallicē*.

friend, friendly, *amīcus* ; he is on friendly terms with me, *amīcus est mihi* ; friendship, *amīcītia* ; friendly feeling (for you), *amīcītia (tuī)*.

My (our) friend Cassius, *Cassius noster*. *Nostrī, suī*, etc. are often used where we say 'our friends,' 'our people,' 'our countrymen,' etc.

frighten, *terrēre*.

frontier (line), *fīnes* (pl.).

full, *plēnus*.

Garden, *hortus*.

garrison, *praesidium*.

gate, *porta*.

general, *imperator*.

Germans, *Germanī*.

get to a place, get away, see go, come.

get back (= receive or take back), *recipiō* ; (= return), *red-īre*.

give, *dō* ; give back, *reddō* ; give up, *dēdō*.

The long vowels are marked.

glad, *laetus*; gladly, use the adj., he will do it even gladly, *vel laetus faciet*; I am glad, *gaudeō*.

glorious, *praeclārus*.

glory, *laus*.

go, *eō*, *veniō*; go across, *trans-eō*; go away, *dis-cēdō*, *ab-eō*; go forward, go on, *pergere*; go into, *venīre in*; go out, *ex-eō*; what is going on? *quid agitur?*

god, *deus*; goddess, *dea*.

gold, *aurum*; golden, *aureus*.

goodbye, imper. of *valeō*.

grant, *dō*; I grant you your life, *vītam tibi concēdō*.

grateful, gratitude: I am very grateful, *magnam habēō grātiām*; I express great gratitude to you, *maximās tibi grātiās agō*.

great, *magnus*; so great, *tantus*: the greatest men, *summī* (not *maximī*) *virī*.

Maximus is used of size or age, rarely of moral or intellectual greatness.

greatness, *magnitūdō*.

Greece, *Graecia*; Greek, *Graecus*.

ground, *humus*; on the ground, *humī*.

grow, *fieri*.

guard, *dēfendere*.

guide, *dux*, *ducis*.

Hand, *manus*; to be at hand,

adesse; hand on, hand over, *trādere*.

hang: to hang one's self, *sē suspendere*; to hang over, *imminēre*, *impendēre*; danger is hanging over the city, *impendet urbī periculum*.

happen, *accidere* (to befall, come to pass); *fieri* (to be done, brought about).

1. I happened to see you, *Accidit ut tē vidērem* (It happened that I saw you. I saw you by accident).

2. *Ita factum est ut tē vidērem*, This was how it happened that I saw you (It was not an accident but due to this cause).

happy, *beātus*.

harass, *vexāre*.

harbour, *portus* (4).

hasten, *mātūrāre*, *contendere*.

hate, I, *odī* (pft. = I have conceived a hatred of); hatred, *odium*; he is hateful to me, *odiō* (dat.) *est mihi*.

have, I (= I possess), *habēō*, *est mihi*; (= cause, as in 'to have a house built'), *cūrāre* with gerundive, see 86.

health: to have good health, be in good health, *valēre*; to be out of health, to be in weak health, *nōn valēre*, *infirmā valetūdine esse*.

hear, *audire*; (= to get to know), *cognōscere*.

heavy, *gravis*.

help; vb. *adiuvāre* (acc.), *subvenīre* (dat.); noun, *auxilium*.

The long vowels are marked.

here, *hīc* ; he is here, *adest*.

herself, see **self**.

hesitate, *dubitāre* (see 103) ;
hesitation, *dubitātiō*.

hill, *mōns*, *montis*.

himself, see **self**.

hold, *tenēre* ; hold in check,
sustinēre ; hold back, *retinēō*.

home, *domus* ; at home, *domī* ;
to go home, *domum īre*.

honourable, *honestus* ; to die
an honourable death, *honestē*
morī.

hope: vb. *spēro* ; noun, *spēs* (5) ;
to lose hope, *dēspērāre*.

He hopes for peace, *pācem spērat* ;
he hopes to see, *spērat sē vīsūrū*.

horse, *equus* ; horseman, *eques*,
-itis.

host (= one who shows hos-
pitality), *hospes*, *-itis* ; (= large
number), *multitūdō*.

hostage, *obses*, *-idis*.

hostile, *hostis*, *inimicus*.

hour, *hōra*.

house, *aedēs*, pl. ; *domus*.

how, *quam* (= to what extent) ;
how few? *quam paucī* ? how
great? *quantus* ?

however, *vērō*, *tamen*, *autem*
(following the first word or
two of the sentence: How-
ever, after he had returned,
Posteā vērō quam rediit . . .).

huge, *ingēns*, *ingentis*.

hunger, *famēs*, *-is*, abl. *famē* ;
to die of hunger, *famē morī*.

hungry, to be, *ēsūrīre*.

hurry, *properāre*.

husband, *vir*.

If, see 115-9.

ignorant, *ignārus*.

ill, *aeger*, *aegra*, *aegrum*.

illness, *morbus*.

imitate, *imitārī*.

immortal, *immortālis*; the im-
mortal gods, *dī immortālēs*.

impend, *impendēre*.

impious, *impius* ; impiety,
impietās.

implore, *implōrāre*.

important, importance, see
97-99.

impossible, use *possum*.

impunity, with, adv. *impūne*.

inasmuch as, *quoniam*. See
159, 160.

indeed, *quidem* following the
emphatic word.

Indian, *Indus*.

induce, *persuādēre*. See 10.

inform: I inform you, give
you information, *certiōrem tē*
faciō ; he received informa-
tion, *certior factus est*, or
cognōvit.

inhabit, *incolere*.

injure, *laedere*.

injustice, act of injustice,
iniūria.

innocent, *innocēns*, *-entis*.

inquire, see **ask**.

intelligence (= news), use
nūntiāre, to bring news.

intend, I, *in animō habeō* ;
cōsiliū est (= my plan is).

The long vowels are marked.

intercept, *intercipiō* (3).

interpret, *interpretāri*.

interview: I have an interview with him, *conveniō eum*.

island, *īnsula*.

itself, see **self**.

Italy, *Italia*.

Jest: vb. *iocō*, noun, *iocus*; in jest, *iocāns* or *per iocum*.

journey, *iter*, *itineris*.

joyful, *laetus*; joyfully, use the adjective.

judgment, *iūdicium*.

jump down, *dēsilire*.

Jupiter, *Iūpiter*, gen. *Iovis*.

jury, gentlemen of the, *iūdicēs*.

just, *iustus*.

Keep: keep in prison, *in carcere tenēre*; he kept saying, *dicebat*.

kill, *interficiō*.

kindly, *benignus*.

kindness (= a kindly act), *beneficium*; (= kind feeling), *benevolentia*.

king, *rēx*, *rēgis*.

kingdom, *rēgnum*.

kiss: vb. *ōsculārī*; noun, *ōsculum*.

know, *scīre* (negative form *nēscīre*), *nōvisse* (pf. of *nōscere*, to become acquainted with); to get to know, *cognōscere*.

I know you did it, *sciō tē fecisse*.

I know the man, *nōvī hominem*, *nōtus est mihi*.

A well-known man, *homo nōtus*.

Our plans get known by the enemy,

cōnsilia nostra ab hostibus cognōscuntur.

He let me know that he was coming to see me, *certiōrem mē fecit sē ad mē ventūrum*.

On various constructions with *scīre*, see 105.

Labour, *labor*, -*ōris*.

Lacedaemonian, *Lacedaemonius*.

lady, *puella*.

lame, *claudus*: lame of one leg, *claudus alterō pede*.

land, *terra*.

large, *magnus*; very large, *permagnus*; so large as, *tantus quantus*.

last: I did it last year, *posterō annō feci*; lastly, *postremō*; at last, *tandem*, *postrēmō*.

late, *sērō*, adv.

Latin, in, *Latīnē*, adv.

laugh, *rīdēre*.

law, *lēx*, *lēgis*.

lead, *dūcere*; lead away, *abducere*; lead back, *reducere*.

leader, *dux*, *ducis*; leading man, *prīnceps*, -*ipis*.

learn (= to be informed), *cognōscere*; (= to be taught), *discere*.

leave (= to go away from), *discēdere* (*ab amicis*, *ā locō*, *ā regiōnē*); (= to go out of), *excēdere* (*ex castris*, *ex urbe*); (= to leave behind), *relinquere*.

legion, *legiō*, -*ōnis*.

length, at, *tandem*.

lest, *nē*.

The long vowels are marked.

let us go, see 126-27.

letter, *litterae*, *epistula*.

levy, *dēlectus* (4): troops are being levied, *dēlectus* (*mīlitum*) *habētur* (a levy of troops is being held).

lie (=to tell lies), *mentīrī*; (=to be recumbent), *iacēre*; to lie down, *cubāre*; to lie down again, *recumbere*.

lieutenant, *lēgātus*.

life, *vīta*: to take another man's life, *vītam alterī ēripere*; in his father's lifetime, *patre vivō*.

light, *lūmen*, *-inis*; to put a light out, *lūmen exstinguere*.

like, *volō*; I should like, see 122.

line, *aciēs* (5); all along the line, *tōtā aciē*.

linger, *morārī*.

lion, *leō*, *-ōnis*.

listen: I listen to him, *audiō eum*.

live, *vīvere*; (= dwell), *habitāre* (*in urbe*).

lo, *ecce*.

lofty, *altus*.

long: 1. adj., *longus*; a long letter, *longa epistula*. 2. adv., *diū*, *iam diū* (see 58).

Iam diū mihi minātur, he has been threatening me for a long time.

Diūtius simulāre nōn potest, he cannot pretend any longer.

3. long before, *multō ante*.

look: look behind, back, round, *respicīō*.

look (-out) for: 1. (= to be on the look-out for, expect), *expectāre*. 2. (= seek for), *quaerere*.

Quaerō librum, I am looking for a book.

Adventum tuum ācerrimē expectō, I look eagerly for your coming.

lose, *perdere*, *āmittere*.

Āmittere, from *mittere*, to let go, means to let a thing slip away, lose by accident or carelessness. *Perdere*, from *per* and *dare*, means to give to destruction, just as *per-ire* means to go to destruction, perish; hence *perdere* means to waste, squander, lose by one's own fault.

love: vb. *amāre*, *diligere*; noun, *amor*, *-ōris*; lover, *amāns*.

loyal, to be, *bene sentīre* (to think rightly).

loyalty, *fidēs* (5).

lucky, *fēlix*; luckless, *infēlix*.

Maiden, *puella*.

majesty, his, *rēx*.

make, *faciō*; *fiō* (see 4); make clear, *significāre*.

man: 1. *homo* (= human being, *ἄνθρωπος*). 2. *vir* (not a woman or a child, *ἀνήρ*).

He ordered the men to retire, *Militibus imperāvit ut recēderent*.

I think that our men are in danger, *Nostrōs in periculō crēdō esse*.

If a man has deceived me, I trust him no more, *Sī quis mē dēcēpit, eī nōn amplius crēdō*.

The long vowels are marked.

many, *multī*; a great many, *permultī*; so many, *tot*; as many as, *quot*.

march: noun, *iter, itineris*; vb. *iter faciō*; by forced marches, *quam potuit maximīs itineribus* (by as great marches as he could; any part of *possum* may be used according to the sense required); in light marching order, *expeditō exercitū*.

marry: (*vir*) in *mātrimōnium dūcit* (*puellam*), a man marries a woman; (*puella*) *nūbit virō*, a woman marries a man (lit. puts on the wedding veil for the man).

marvel, *admīrārī*.

marvellous, *ēgregius*.

matter, *rēs*.

may: you may go (=you have permission to go), *licet tibi ire*.

mean, *turpis*.

meantime, *meanwhile, intereā*.

measures: I take measures for you, *cōsulō* (3) *tibi*; for my own security, *salūtī meae*.

meet: I come to meet you, *obviam* (adv.) *tibi veniō*.

mention, *dicō*.

message, messenger, *nūntius*; to bring or give a message, *nūntiāre*; *nūntium afferre*; when I received this message, say, when this message was brought.

middle, midst, use adj. *medius*;

the middle of the night, mid-night, *nox media*.

mile, a, *mille passus* (1000 paces); it is five miles away from the town, *quīnque mīlia passuum ab oppidō abest*.

mind, *mēns, mentis*; I make up my mind, *statuō*. See 103, 105. Mind you come, see 124.

money, sum of money, *pecūnia*.

monster, *mōnstrum*.

month, *mēnsis*.

moon, *lūna*.

moreover, *praeterea*.

morning, this, in the morning, *māne*; the following morning, *postridiē māne*.

mortal, *mortalis*.

mother, *māter*.

mount, mountain, *mōns*; mountain-passes, *angustiae montium*.

mouth, *ōs, ōris*.

move, *movēre*.

much: adj. *multus*; adv. *multum*; *multo* (abl. of measure) with comparatives: much better, *multō melius* (better by a great deal).

murder, *necāre, interficere*.

must, use gerund or gerundive or *debeō*.

myself, see **self**.

Name: vb. *nōmināre*; noun, *nōmen, -inis*.

narrow, *angustus*.

nation, *gēns, gentis*.

nature, *nātūra*.

The long vowels are marked.

near, *apud, ad*; nearer, *propius*, adv.; nearest, *proximus*; to draw near, *appropinquāre*.

nearly, see **almost**.

necessary, it is, *necesse est*.

need: if there is any need, *sī opus est*; I need no slave, *servō* (abl.) *nihil opus est mihi*, or *nōn egeō servō* (abl.).

neglect, *neglegere*.

neighbour, *neighbouring*, *fini-timus*.

never, *nunquam*.

nevertheless, *tamen*.

new, *novus*.

news, to bring, *nūntiāre*; to get news, news came, etc., use *nūntiāre*: is there any news? *num quid novī est?* no news, *nihil novī*.

next, *proximus*; next day, *postrīdiē*.

night, *nox*; at night, *noctū*; far into the night, *in multam noctem*; at nightfall, *sub noctem*.

no, *nūllus*; no one, *nēmo*; nothing, *nihil*: for 'and no one,' see 41.

notice, give, *ēdicere*.

nourish, *alere*.

now: 1. (= at this time), *nunc*.

2. (= by this time, already), *iam*. 3. sometimes translated by *autem*. See 168.

number, *multitūdō*.

Obey, *pārere*, dat.

obliged: I was obliged to do it, *necesse erat mihi facere*.

obtain, *nanciscī*.

offer, *dare*.

officer: officer in command, *lēgātus* (the officer appointed by the *imperator* to act as his deputy or lieutenant).

officially, *pūblicē*; to report officially, write an official letter, (*litterās*) *pūblicē scribere*.

often, *saepe, saepius, saepissimē*; as often as, *quotiēns*; so often, *totiēns, tam saepe*.

old age, *senectūs, -ūtis*.

old man, *senex, senis*.

once: once upon a time, *quondam*; at once, *statim, confestim*.

one, *ūnus*; the one . . ., the other . . ., *alter . . .*; alter . . .; one of the soldiers, *ūnus ex militibus*; one day, *quōdam diē*.

one's self, see **self**.

only, *modo, solum, tantum*; not only, *nōn modo, nōn solum* (often followed by *sed etiam*, but also); only 10 miles, *nōn amplius decem mīlia*.

open, to, *aperire*; to be open, *patere*.

openly, *apertē*.

opinion, *sententia*.

opportunity, *occāsiō*; an opportunity to escape presents itself, *occāsiō datur effugiendī*.

oppose, *resistere*, dat.

or, *aut, vel*; in questions *an*;

The long vowels are marked.

aut is used when one alternative is excluded; *vincendum aut moriendum est*, we must either win or die.

orator, *ōrātor*.

order, give orders, *iubēre, imperāre*.

Iubeō eum ire; Imperō eī ut eat, nē eat. Without orders from the commander, *iniussū imperātōris*.

other: the one . . ., the other, *alter* . . . *alter*; others, *aliī*; the others *ceterī*.

ought: 1. generally translated by gerund or gerundive, see 83-89. 2. sometimes by a genitive (see 94): *Bonī civis est facere*, a good citizen ought to do it. 3. *dēbeō, oportet*.

Note the tenses in 'I ought not to have done it,' *Nōn dēbuī facere, nōn oportuīt mē facere* (it was my duty not to do).

ourselves, see **self**.

outwit, *fallere*.

over: all is over with me, *actum est dē mē*.

own: your own safety, *tua ipsius salūs*.

ox, *bōs, bovis*.

Panic: throw into a panic, *perterrere*; panic-stricken, *perterritus*.

pardon, *ignōscere*, dat.

parent, *parēns*.

Paris, *Lutetia*.

Parthians, *Parthī*; adj. *Parthicus*.

pass (= go by), *praeter-eō*.

passes: mountain-passes, *angustiae montium*.

pay, *solvere*.

peace, *pāx*: to arrange a peace, terms of peace, *pācem constituere*.

peaceful, *placidus*.

people, the, *populus*: the Roman people, *populus Rōmānus*; the senate and people of Rome, *senātus populusque Rōmānus*.

perceive, *intellegere*.

perhaps, *fortasse*.

permission, permit, see **allow**.

perpetual, *sempiternus*.

Persians, *Persae*.

person, *homo*.

persuade, *persuādēre*.

1. *Persuādēō tibi id esse vērū*, I persuade you that it is true.

2. *Persuādēō tibi ut maneās (nē maneās)*, I persuade you to stay (not to stay). See 10.

pirate, *praedō, -ōnis*.

pity, *miserīcordia*.

place, *locus*.

plan, *cōsiliū*.

Plato, *Platō, -ōnis*.

play, a, *fābella*.

plead a cause, *causam dīcere*.

please: 1. (= I like, choose), *volō*. 2. I am pleased (= I rejoice), *gaudeō*. 3. Please come, *fac veniās*. See 124.

The long vowels are marked.

pleasing, *grātus*.

pleasure, *voluptās, -ātis*.

plot, *insidiae*: I make a plot against you, *insidiās tibi faciō* (or *parō*); to disclose, show up, the plot, *patefacere insidiās*.

plunder, I, *dīripio*.

plunge a sword into one's breast, *gladium sibi in pectus in-figere*.

poem, *carmen*.

poison, to, *venēnō necāre*.

populace, *populus*.

position, *locus*; take up a position, *cōnsidere*.

possess, *habeō*, or *est mihi*; I take possession of the camp, *potior* (4) *castris* (abl.).

possible: as often as possible, *quam saepissimē* (*possum*); as large as possible, *quam maximus*.

power, *potestās, -ātis*; powerful, *potēns*.

praetor, *praetor, -ōris*.

praise, *laudāre*.

prayers, *precēs*.

prefer, *mālō*.

prepare, make preparations, *parāre, comparāre*.

To make all preparations for starting, *omnia parāre ad proficiscendum*; all preparations having been made, *omnibus rēbus parātis*.

present, a, *dōnum*; at present, at the present time, *nunc*.

pretend, *simulāre*. See 108.

prevent, *obstāre*. See 11, 12.

prey, *praeda*; I leave them to be preyed on by their enemies, *relinquō eōs praedae hostibus* (I leave them as a prize to their enemies).

prison, *carcer, -eris*; I throw into prison, *in carcerem* (or, *in vincula*) *cōniciō*.

prisoner, *captivus*; to make (a man) prisoner, *capere*.

proceed, *pergere*.

proconsul, *prōcōsul, -ulis*.

produce, *gignere*.

prolong, *prōdūcere*; prolong a conversation far into the night, *sermōnem in multam noctem prōdūcō*.

promise, make a promise, *prōmittere, pollicērī*.

I make this one promise, *id ūnum polliceor*; I promise to come, *prōmittō mē ventūrum*.

promptly, *mātūrē*.

protect: I protect him, *praesidiō eī sum* (= I am a protection to him); *tueor eum* (= I watch over him); protection, *praesidium*.

provide for the safety of a friend, *amicī salūtī cōsultare*.

provincē, *prōvincia*.

pull out, *extrahere*.

punish (him), inflict punishment on (him), *poenā* (or *supplicio*) *afficere* (*eum*) (to affect him with punishment); punishment, *poena, supplicium*.

pursue, *persequi*.

The long vowels are marked.

put : put to death, *interficiō* ;
I put myself in a perilous
position, *periculō mē offerō*.

Queen, *rēgina*.

quench, *restringere*.

question : I ask him a ques-
tion, *ex eō quaerō* (I inquire
of him) ; I question him, *in-
terrogō eum* (*interrogāre* is used
of cross-questioning a man,
asking him a lot of questions).

quickly, *celeriter*, superl. *celer-
rimē*.

quiet, I keep, *quiēscō*.

Rajah, *rēx*.

rampart, *vāllum*.

ransom, to, *redimere* (to buy
back).

rashly, *temerē* ; to act rashly,
adopt rash measures, *temerē
agere*.

rather, *potius* ; I would rather,
mālō.

reach, *pervenire*, *venire*.

read, *legere* ; read aloud, *recitāre*.

ready (for), *parātus* (*ad*) ; to
get ready, *parāre*.

really, in a question may be
expressed by *num.* See 5.

reason, *causa* ; there is no
reason why we should go,
nihil causae est cūr eāmus
(see 157) ; what reason is
there ? *quid causae est ?*

reassure (them), *firmiōres
facere* (*eōrum*) *animōs*.

receive, *accipiō*, *recipiō*.

recognise, *agnōscere*.

recommend (= advise), *ad-
monēre*, *suādēre* ; *admoneō tē
ut eās (nē eās)*, *suādeō tibi ut
eās (nē eās)*, I recommend
you to go (not to go).

recover, *convalescere* (*ē morbō*).

reflect, *cōgitāre*.

refuse, *recūsāre* ; I refuse to
tell, *recūsō nē dicam* ; I don't
refuse to tell, *nōn recūsō
quān dicam*.

regard : with regard to, *dē*.

regiment, *legiō*, *-ōnis*.

regret : I much regret, *valdē
mē paenitet*.

rejoice, *gaudeō*.

release, *liberāre*.

remain, *manēre*.

remark, *dicere*.

remember, *meminisse*, *recor-
dārī*. These vbs. govern gen.
of person, acc. or gen. of thing.

remove, *tollere*.

rend, *dilaniāre*.

repair, *reficiō*.

reply, *respondēre* ; (= to write
back), *rescribere*.

report, *nūntiāre*.

reserve, *reservāre*.

resist : I resist him, *resistō eī* ;
I resist an attack, *impetum
sustineō*.

resources, *opēs*, pl.

rest : the rest (= the others),
reliqui, *cēteri*.

The rest of the army, *reliquus
exercitus* ; the rest of the soldiers,
reliqui milites.

The long vowels are marked.

restrain, *retinēre*.

I can't restrain myself from shouting, *retinēre mē nōn possum quā clāmē*.

result: the result was that,
ita factum est ut . . .

retain, *retinēre*.

retire, *recēdere*.

return: 1. (= come back),
redīre, revertī. 2. (= give
back), *reddere*.

reverence, to, *verērī*.

revolt (from), be in revolt,
dēficere (ab); I revolt and
join the enemy, *ad hostēs*
dēficiō.

reward, *praemium*.

Rhine, *Rhēnus*.

rich, *dīves, -itis, dīvitior, dīvi-*
tissimus; to be rich (in gold),
abundāre (aurō).

riches, *dīvitiae*.

ride: *vehī (equō)* (to be carried
by the horse); ride forward,
prōvehī; ride up, *advehī*.

right (i.e. on the right, not the
left side), *dexter, dextra, dex-*
trum.

rise, *surgere*.

risk, *periculum*.

river, *flūmen, -inis*.

road, *via*.

rob, *spoliāre*; I rob him of his
clothes, *veste eum spoliō*.

robe, *vestis*.

Roman, *Rōmānus*.

rough, *asper*.

rouse, *excitāre*.

royal, *rēgius*.

rule, *imperium*; to rule over,
imperāre, dat.

rumour, *fāma*.

run, *currere*; supplies run short,
frūmentum dēficit.

runaway, *fugitivus*.

rush, a, *impetus* (4).

Sad, *trīstis*; sadly, use the
adjective.

safe: 1. *tūtus* (= watched over,
and therefore safe). 2.
salvus (= safe and sound),
incolumis (= unharmed).

To keep (a province) safe, preserve
it in safety, *tūtā servāre (prō-*
vinciam).

I make your position safe, *tūtēlam*
tibi parō.

safety, *salūs, -ūtis*; to provide
for the safety of a friend,
amīcī salūtī cōsulare.

sagacity, *cōsiliū*.

sail, *nāvigāre*; set sail, *solvere*
nāvem, or simply *solvere*.

sailor, *nauta*.

salvation, *salūs, -ūtis*.

same, *īdem*; at the same time,
simul, eōdem tempore.

sand, *arēna*.

save, *servāre, cōservāre*.

saviour, *cōservātor*.

say, *dicere, loquī*. When a
negative follows *negāre* is
generally used: he says that
he did not do it, *negat sē*
fēcisse. *Inquit* (= he says,
or, he said) is used when the

The long vowels are marked.

actual words of the speaker are quoted ; it follows the first few words of the speech, as *Tum ille rīdēns 'Hōc vērō' inquit 'optimum.'*

scarcely, *vix*.

Scipio, *Scipiō*, -ōnis.

sea, *mare* ; on the sea-coast, *maritimus* (adj.).

season, *tempus*.

secretly, in secret, *clam*.

security, *incolumitās*, -ātis.

see : 1. (with the eyes), *vidēre*.
2. (with the mind, understand), *intellegere*.

seek : 1. (= try to find, look for), *quaerere*. 2. (= try to reach or obtain, make for), *petere*.

seem, *vidērī*.

Not used impersonally : It seemed to me that I was wandering, or, as if I was wandering, *visus sum mihi errāre* (I seemed to myself to be wandering).

seemly, it is, *deceat* (2).

seize, *occupāre*.

seldom, *rārō* ; very seldom, *per-rārō*.

self : myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, themselves, etc.

These words are used (1) reflexively, (2) emphatically.

(1) *Reflexive* : the same person or thing is both subject and object of the verb : 'A praises A' :

Mē laudō, I praise myself,

Tē laudās, you praise yourself,

Sē laudat, he praises himself,

and in plural *nōs*, *vōs*, *sē*.

(2) *Emphatic* (see 47) :

Ipse vidī, I saw it myself,

Ipsi vidimus, etc.

Ipse vidistī, you saw it yourself,

Ipse vidit, he saw it himself,

Caesar ipse, Caesar himself,

Britannia ipsa, Britain itself.

sell, *vēndere*.

senate, *senātus*.

send, *mittere* ; send a letter to him, *litterās ad eum dare* ; send over or across, *trans-mittere* ; send forward, *prae-mittere* ; I send for a man, *hominem ad mē vocārī iubeō* (I order the man to be summoned to me).

sensible, *prūdēns*.

separate, *dividere*.

serious : a serious illness, *gravis morbus* ; adv. *graviter*.

servant, *ancilla*.

set off or out, *proficīscī*.

severity, *sevērītās*, -ātis.

shameless, *impudēns*, -entis.

sheep, *ovis*.

shepherd, *pāstor*, -ōris.

shine, *micāre*.

ship, *nāvis*.

short, *brevis*.

shout, to, *clāmāre* ; a shouting, *clāmor*, -ōris.

show, *ostendere*.

Sicily, *Sicilia*.

sickness, *morbus*.

sign, signal, *signum*.

silent, to be, keep silence, *tacēre*.

silver, *argentum*.

The long vowels are marked.

simulate, *simulāre*.

since: *prep., post.*

conj., cum (see 68), *quoniam*
(see 159, 160).

sister, *soror, -ōris*.

sit, sit down, *sedere*.

size, *magnitūdō, -inis*.

skilful, *perītus*.

slaughter, *clādēs*.

slave, *servus*.

slavery, *servitūs, -ūtis*.

slay, *occidere, interficere, caedere*.

sleep, *somnus*, to sleep, go to
sleep, *dormire*; in my sleep,
in somnīs, or use the participle
dormiēns.

slip, to, *lābī*; slip down, *dēlābī*.

slow, *tardus*.

smile, *rīdēre*.

snore, *stertere*.

so: 1. (= accordingly), *itaque*,
igitur. See 168. 2. (= to
this extent, to that degree),
tam, ita.

Nōn tam (or *ita*) *gravis est morbus*
quam antea, the illness is not so
serious as before.

Socrates, *Sōcratēs, -is*.

soldier, *mīles, -itis*.

some, see 43, 44: some time
(= for a good long time), *ali-*
quamdiū.

son, *fīlius*.

soon, *mox, brevī*; very soon,
per-brevī; as soon as, *simul*
atque.

sorrow, *lūctus* (4).

soul, *animus*.

Spain, *Hispania*.

spare, *parcere* (dat.).

speak, *loquī, dicere*.

specially, *maximē*.

speechless: he is speechless
with astonishment, *admīrātus*
stupet.

speedily, *celeriter*; as speedily
as possible, *quam celerrimē*;
with all speed, *omnī celeritāte*.

spend (time), *cōnsūmere*.

spirit, *animus*; to break the
spirit of the citizens, *frangere*
cīvium animōs.

spoil, *spolium*.

stablish, *stabilire*.

stain, *tingere*.

stand, *stāre*; stand still, *cōn-*
sistere; to stand in the way
of another, *obstāre alterī*
(followed by *quō minus*, see
12).

start, *proficiscī*.

state, *cīvitās, rēs publica*.

stationed, to be, *cōnsēdisse* (to
have settled).

statue, *statua*.

stay: stay behind, remain,
manēre; make a stay, com-
morārī.

steal, *auferō*.

step in, *ingredior*; step out,
ēgredior.

still: 1. (= nevertheless, all
the same), *tamen*. 2. (= even
now), *etiam nunc*.

stone, *lapis, -idis*.

storm, *tempestās, -ātis*.

strike, strike down, *ferire*.

The long vowels are marked.

strong, *firmus*.

subject, *matter*, *rēs*.

successfully, *fēliciter*.

such : 1. (= of such a kind), *tālis*. 2. (= of such size), *such* great, *such* a large, *tantus*. 3. *such* a long letter, *tam longa epistula*.

suddenly, all of a sudden, *repente, subitō*.

suffer, *patior, perpetior* ; he suffered (= allowed) me to do it, *id mē facere passus est*.

suicide, to commit, *suā sē manū interficere*.

suitable, *idōneus* ; suitable for every season, *idōneus ad omne tempus*.

sultan, *rēr*.

sum (of money), *pecūnia*.

summer, *aestās, -ātis*.

summon (to my presence), *vocō (ad mē)*.

sun, *sōl*.

sunlight, in the, *in sōle*.

sunset, *sōlis occāsus* (4).

supper, *cēna* ; to have supper, *cēnāre*.

suppliant, *supplex, -icis* ; he approaches as a suppliant, in suppliant fashion, *supplex adit*.

supplies, *frūmentum* (corn), *cibus*.

support, *subsidiū* ; I come to your support, *subsidiō tibi veniō*.

suppose, *putāre, existimāre*.

supremacy : to acknowledge

British supremacy, *populī Britannicī imperiō obtemperāre*.

surprised, to be, *admīrārī*.

surrender, to : 1. (= to give a thing up), *dēdere*. 2. (= to give themselves up), *sē dēdere*. a surrender, a giving up, *dēditō*.

surround, *circumdare*.

suspicion, *suspiciō* ; a strong suspicion, *magna suspiciō* ; I arouse suspicion, *suspiciōnem moveō*.

swift, *celer*.

sword, *gladius*.

Syracuse, *Syrācūsae*.

Take, *capiō* : (= lead), *dūcere* ; I take his life, *vītā eī ēripiō* ; I take on board ship, *in nāvem impōnō*.

tale, to tell a, *nārrāre*.

talk, to, *loquī* ; to talk to a friend, *colloquī cum amīcō*.

teach, *docēre*.

teacher, *magister*.

tear, to (something) away from, *dīvellere (aliquid) ab . . .* ; tear in pieces, *dilaniāre*.

tear, a, *lacrima* ; to shed tears, *flēre, lacrimāre*.

tell : 1. *dīcō, nūntiō, certiōrem tē faciō, negō, scribō, nārrō*. 2. *iubeō*.

temple, *templum*.

Terence, *Terentius*.

terrify, *perterrere*.

territory, *fīnēs* pl. (= boundaries).

The long vowels are marked.

terror : in terror, use a participle.

than, quam : in negative sentences use the abl. without *quam*.

1. *Diligentior est quam Polybius.*

2. *Polybium sequāmur quō nēmo fuit diligentior.*

thank : I thank him (warmly), (*maximās*) *grātiās ei agō*.

themselves, see **self**.

then : 1. (=at that time), *tum*; then but not before, *tum vērō* (then indeed, then of a truth). 2. (=after that, thereupon), *dein, deinde*. 3. (=therefore), *igitur* (placed after the first word or two of its sentence).

there, *ibi*.

therefore, *igitur* (not placed first in the sentence).

Thessaly, *Thessalia*.

think, *putāre, arbitrārī, existimāre*; I think of going to Rome, *Rōmam ire cōgitō*; what do you think? what is your opinion? *quid sentīs?*

thirst, *sitis*, acc. *sitim*.

though, *etsi* (even if, used like *sī* with indicative and subjunctive, see 115-19); *cum* with subj., see 68; sometimes translated by participle, see 77.

threaten, I, or, keep on threatening, *minor* (1), *minitor* (1);

I threaten him with punishment, *supplicium ei minor*.

I threaten to tell all, *minitor mē omnia dicturum*.

danger threatens the city, *impendet urbī periculum*.

throne (=kingdom), *rēgnum*.

through, *per*, acc.

throw, *iaciō* (3), *cōniciō*; throw aside, *abiciō*; I throw down my arms at your feet, *arma ad pedēs tibi abiciō*.

thunderbolt, *fulmen, -inis*.

thus, *ita, sic*.

till, see 64.

time, *tempus*; at that time, *tum*.

timid, *timidus*.

tired, *fessus*.

to-day, *hodiē*.

tomb, *sepulcrum*.

to-morrow, *crās*.

too : 1. (=also), see **also**.

2. (=excessively, too much), *nimis*; too often, *nimis saepe*.

touch, *tangere*.

towards, *ad*.

town, *oppidum, urbs*; towns-people, *oppidānī*.

track, *vestigium* (use the plur.).

trade, to pursue, *negōtiārī*; in pursuit of trade, *negōtiandī causā*.

traveller, *viātor*.

treacherous : treachery, *insidiāe*; to act treacherously, *insidiīs agere*; to adopt no treacherous measures, *nihil insidiīs agere*.

The long vowels are marked.

treason, *prōditio*.

treaty, *foedus, -eris*.

tree, *arbor, -oris*.

trial: to make trial (try the experiment), *experiri*; without trial (without having one's case tried), *indictā causā* (the cause not having been pleaded).

tribune, *tribūnus*.

trouble, a, *malum*: some trouble, *aliquid malū*; to trouble one's self, *laborāre*; I don't trouble myself as to what you do, *quid tū faciās nōn laborō*.

troublesome, *molestus*.

trust: I trust him, *fidem habeo ei*, *credō ei*; he is not to be trusted, not particularly trustworthy, *nōn credendum est ei*, *minor fidēs ei habenda est*.

truth, the: use the adj. *vērus*, true.

try, *cōnāri*, with inf.

turn, I (intransitive), *mē vertō*, *convector*; I turn away (intr.), *avertor*; to be turned into, become, *fieri* (see 4).

tyrant, *tyrannus*.

Unarmed, *inermis*.

uncertain, *incertus*.

uncle, *avunculus*.

under, *sub*: 1. *sub arborem fugit*; 2. *sub arbore sedet*.

understand, *intelligere*.

unexpected, *imprōvisus* (un-

foreseen); unexpectedly, *imprōvisō*.

unfriendly, *inimicus*.

ungrateful, *ingrātus*.

unharmcd, *incolumis*.

unheard of, *inauditus*.

unjust, *iniquus*.

unless, *nisi*.

unwilling, I am, *nōlō*: he did it unwillingly, *invitus* (adj.) *fēcit*; she did it unwillingly, *invita fēcit*.

urge, *hortāri*, *cohortāri*. See 10.

use: make use of, *utor*, abl.; he used to say, *dicēbat* or *dicere solēbat*.

useful, *utilis*.

Valour, *virtūs, -ūtis*.

vengeance, to take, *ulcisci*; to take vengeance for an act of injustice, *ulcisci iniūriam*; without taking vengeance, *inultus, -a, -um*.

very: very great, *permagnus*; very short, *perbrevis*; on this very night, *hāc ipsā nocte*.

victory, *victōria*.

vigilance, *vigilantia*.

villa, *villa*.

virtue, *virtūs, -ūtis*.

virtuous, *honestus*.

visit, *visere*.

voice, *vōx, vōcis*.

voluntarily, *ultrō*.

voyage: I have a prosperous voyage, *prosperē nāvīgō*; I have a troublesome voyage, *incommodē nāvīgō*.

The long vowels are marked.

Wage war, *bellum gerere*.

wait, *expectāre*.

He waited for them, *expectāvit eōs*; he waited for them to arrive, *expectāvit dum venirent*. See 64.

walk about, take a walk, *ambulāre*.

wall, *pariēs*, -etis, m.

wander about, *errāre*.

want, *volō*; to be wanting (lacking), *dē-esse*.

war, *bellum*.

warm, *tepēns*.

warn, *moneō*, *admoneō*.

1. I warn you that he is near, *Moneō tē cum adesse*.

2. I warn you to go (not to go), *Moneō tē ut eās (nē eās)*.

3. I warn you what to avoid, *Moneō tē quid sit vitandum*.

waste, lay waste, *vāstāre*.

watch over, *tuērī*.

watchman, *custōs*, -ōdis.

water, *aqua*.

way: to make one's way, *iter facere*; to give way, *cēdere*.

wealth, *dīvitiae*.

weapon, *tēlum*; without weapons, say 'unarmed.'

weather, *tempestās*; good weather for . . ., *tempestās idōnea ad* . . .; the weather is violent, *magna est vis tempestātis*.

weep, weep over, *flēre*.

weight, *pondus*, -eris.

welcome, *grātus*.

well, *bene*; to be well, keep well, *valēre*.

what, see 36-9, 50.

whatever, see 45, 54.

when, whence, see 36, 37; as to moods and tenses with *cum*, see 65-72.

whenever, see 54.

where, see 36, 37.

wherefore, *quā rē*.

wherever, see 54.

whether, in indirect questions, see 6.

while: translated by participle (see 77), or by *dum* (see 62, 63), sometimes by *autem* (see note to Ex. 48); for a long while, *diū* (see 58)

whither, see 36, 37.

who, which, see 36, 37.

whole, *tōtus*.

why, see 36, 37.

wickedness, *scelus*, -eris.

wife, *uxor*.

wild beast, *fera* (from adj. *ferus*, wild; *bestia* is understood).

willing: use *volō*; not willing, use *nolō*.

win (= conquer), *vincere*; win (= attain) fame, *glōriam cōsequi*.

wind, *ventus*.

With the wind in my favour, *secundō ventō*; with the wind all in my favour, *secundissimō ventō*; with the wind against me, *adversō ventō*.

window, *fenestra*.

winter, *hiems*, -emis; winter-

The long vowels are marked.

quarters, *hiberna* (*castra*);
to winter, *hiemāre*.

wise, *sapiēns*.

wish, *volō*; not to wish, *nōlō*;
wish for, *volō, cupiō*.

with (= in company with),
cum; to stay with (i.e. in
the house of) a friend, *apud*
amīcum commorārī.

withdraw (an army from),
dēducere (*exercitum dē*).

within a few days, etc., see
Section 1.

without, *sine*, *abl.*

withstand: we can with-
stand any force (however
great), *quantūvis cōpiās sus-*
tinēre possumus.

witness, *tēstis*; call a witness,
tēstem prōducere.

woman, *mulier, -eris, fēmina*;
the women and children,
mulierēs liberī-que.

wonder, *mīrārī*.

wondrous, *mīrābilis, mīrus*.

wont: it is my wont to do it,
id facere cōsuēvī (pf. of *cōn-*
suēscere, to grow accustomed).

wool, *lāna*; woollen, *lāneus*.

word, *verbum*.

worthy, *dignus*: he is worthy
to rule over us, see 158.

would: he would not do it,
i.e. he was not willing, use
nōlō.

wound, a, *vulnus, -eris*; to
wound, *vulnerāre*.

wretched, *miser*; poor wretch,
homo miserrimus.

write, *scribere* (*ad amīcum*).

writer, *scriptor*.

wrong, a, *iniūria*; to do a
wrong to him, *committere*
iniūriam in eum; to be
wronged by them, *accipere*
iniūrias ab eis; the wrongs
done by the Helvetii to the
Roman people, *Helvētiorum*
iniūriae populī Rōmānī.

Xenophon, *Xenophōn, -ōntis*.

Year, *annus*.

yesterday, *herī*.

yet (nevertheless), *tamen*; as
yet, *adhūc* (hitherto); not
yet, *adhūc nōn*.

yield, *cēdere*.

young man, *adulēscēns*.

yourself, see *self*.

youth, *youthful, iuvenis*;
youthfulness, *iuventūs, -ūtis*.

Zeal, *studium*.

IRREGULAR VERBS¹

The long vowels are marked.

| | |
|---|--|
| Ab-iciō (IACIŌ), -ere, -iēcī, -iectum. | Bibō, -ere, bibī. |
| ab-ripiō (RAPIŌ), -ere, -ripuī, -reptum. | Cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsum. |
| ac-cidō (CADŌ), -ere, -cidī. | caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesum. |
| ac-cipiō (CAPIŌ), -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum. | capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum. |
| ad-imō (EMŌ), -ere, -ēmī, -ēmp-tum. | Compounds like accipiō. |
| ad-iuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtum. | cēdō, -ere, cēssī, cēssum. |
| ad-orior, -orīrī, -ortus sum. | circum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datum. |
| af-ferō <i>or</i> ad-ferō, -ferre, at-tulī, al-lātum. | claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum. |
| af-ficiō (FACIŌ), -ere, -fēcī, -fec-tum. | Compounds like inclūdō. |
| a-gnōscō ((G)NŌSCŌ), -ere, a-gnōvī, a-gnitum (agnōturus). | co-gnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum. |
| agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum. | cō-gō (AGŌ), -ere, co-ēgī, co-āctum. |
| alō, -ere, aluī, altum. | col-ligō (LEGŌ), -ere, -lēgī, -lēc-tum. |
| a-periō, -īre, aperuī, apertum. | com-periō (PARIŌ), -īre, com-perī, com-pertum. |
| a-scendō (SCANDŌ), -ere, -ī, -scēn-sum. | com-plector, -ī, com-plexus. |
| ā-spiciō, -ere, ā-spexī, ā-spectum. | com-pleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum. |
| au-deō, -ēre, ausus sum. | com-primō (PREMŌ), -ere, -pressī, -pressum. |
| audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum. | cōn-iciō (IACIŌ), -ere, -iēcī, -iec-tum. |
| au-ferō, -ferre, abs-tulī, ab-lātum. | cōn-scendō (SCANDŌ), -ere, -scendī, -scēnsum. |
| | cōn-sīdō, -ere, consēdī, conses-sum. |

¹ In drawing up this list I have found the alphabetical list in Gildersleeve and Lodge helpful.

The long vowels are marked.

cōn-sistō, -ere, cōnstitī, cōnstitutum.

cōn-spiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum.

cōn-stituō (STATUō), -ere, -uī, -stitūtum.

cōn-suēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum.

cōn-sulō, -ere, cōnsulū, -sultum.

con-temnō, -ere, -temp̄sī, -temptum.

con-tendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum.

con-valēscō, -ere, -valuī.

crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.

crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētum.

cupiō, -ere, cupīvī, cupītum.

currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum.

Dē-dō, -ere, dēdidī, dēditum.

dē-iciō (IACIō), -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.

dē-fendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēsum.

dēlēō, -ēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum.

dē-scendō (SCANDō), -ere, -scendī, -scēsum.

dē-serō, -ere, -seruī, -sertum.

de-siliō (SALIō), -īre, -uī.

dē-sinō, -ere, dēsīī *or* dēsīvī, dēsītum.

dē-sistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum.

dē-spiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum.

dīcō, -ere, dixī, -dictum.

dī-gredior (GRADIOR), -ī, -gressus sum.

dī-ligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.

dīscō, -ere, didicī.

dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum.

dō, dare, dedī, datum.

doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctum.

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum.

Ē-ligō (LEGō), -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum.

emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptum.

eō, īre, īvī (īī), itum (eō, īs, it, īmus, ītis, eunt; ībō; ībam; eam; īrem; ī; iēns, euntis; eundum).

ex-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum.

expergīscor, -ī, experrēctus sum.

ex-perior, -īrī, -pertus sum.

ex-stinguō, -ere, -stinxī, -stinctum.

Faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.

Compounds like afficiō.

fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsum.

fateor, -ērī, fassus sum.

feriō, -īre, percussī, percussum.

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.

fīgō, -ere, fīxī, fīxum.

fīō, fierī, factus sum.

fleō, -ēre, flēvī, flētum.

fluō, -ere, fluxī.

frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum.

fruor, -ī, frūctus sum.

fugiō, -ere, fūgī.

Gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum.

gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.

gignō, -ere, genuī, genitum.

gradior, -ī, gressus sum.

Compounds like dīgredior.

Iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactum.

Compounds like abiciō.

i-gnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnōtum.

in-cendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēsum.

in-clūdō (CLAUDō), -ere, -clūsī, clūsum.

The long vowels are marked.

intel-legō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.
inter-imō (EMŌ), -ere, -ēmī,
-ēptum.

irāscor, -ī, irātus sum.
iubeō, -ēre, iūssī, iūssum.
iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūctum.

Lābor, -ī, lāpsus sum.
laedō, -ere, laesī, laesum.
lavō, -āre, lāvī, lautum.
legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum.
loquor, -ī, locūtus sum.

Mālō, mälle, mālui (mālō,
māvīs, māvult, mālumus,
māvultis, mālunt; mālam;
mālēbam; mālīm; māllem).
maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūm.
metuō, -ere, metuī.
micō, -āre, -uī.
mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum.
moriōr, morī, mortuus sum
(moritūrus).
moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum.

Nancīscor, -ī, nactus.
nāscor, -ī, nātus sum.
neg-legō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.
nōlō, nōlle, nōlui (nōlō, nōn
vīs, nōn vult, nōlumus, nōn
vultis, nōlunt; nōlam; nōlē-
bam; nōlim; nōllem; nōlī).
nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtum.
nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptum.

Oblīvīscor, -ī, oblītus sum.
ob-sideō (SEDEŌ), -ēre, -sēdī,
-sessum.
ob-stō, -stāre, -stītī (obstātūrus).

oc-cidō (CADŌ), -ere, -cidī, -cā-
sum.
oc-cidō (CAEDŌ), -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum.
of-ferō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum.
orior, -īrī, ortus sum (oritūrus).
os-tendō, -ere, -tendī, -tēnsūm.

Parcō, -ere, pepercī.
pāscō, -ere, pāvī, pāstum.
pate-faciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum.
patior, -ī, passus sum.
pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum.
per-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
per-eō, -īre, perīī, -itum.
pergō (REGŌ), -ere, perrēxī, per-
rēctum.
per-petior (PATIOR), -ī, per-pes-
sus sum.
petō, -ere, -īvī (-iī), -itum.
pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum.
pos-sum, posse, potuī.
premō, -ere, pressī, pressum.
Compounds like comprimō.
prō-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
pro-ficīscor, -ī, profectus sum.

Quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesī-
tum.
queror, querī, questus sum.
quiēscō, -ere, quiēvī, quiētum.

Rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptum.
Compounds like abripiō.
re-cumbō, -ere, -cubuī.
red-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
red-imō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptum.
re-iciō (IACIŌ), -ere, -iēcī, -iec-
tum.
re-liquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum.

The long vowels are marked.

re-periō, -īre, repperī, repertum.

re-sistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum.

re-spiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum.

re-spondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum.

re-stinguō, -ere, -stinxī, -stinctum.

rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsum.

rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptum.

Scindō, -ere, scidī, scissum.

scribō, -ere, scripsī, scriptum.

sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum.

sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus.

sequor, -ī, secūtus sum.

soleō, -ēre, solitus sum.

solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum.

statuō, -ere, statuī, statūtum.

Compounds like cōstituō.

stō, stāre, stetī, stātum.

Compounds like obstō.

stringō, -ere, strinxī, strictum.

suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsum.

sūmō (EMŌ), -ere, sūmpsī, sūmpsum.

surgō (REGŌ), -ere, surrēxī, surrēctum.

sus-tineō (TENEŌ), -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.

Tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctum.

teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentum.

Compounds like sustineō.

ting(u)ō, -ere, tinxī, tinctum.

tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum.

trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.

trahō, -ere, trāxī, trāctum.

Ulcīscor, -ī, ultus sum.

ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum.

Vehō, -ere, vexī, vectum.

vellō, -ere, vellī, vulsum.

vēn-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum.

vertō, -ere, vertī, versum.

vetō, -āre, vetuī, vetitum.

videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum.

vinciō, -īre, vinxī, vinctum.

vincō, -ere, vīcī, vīctum.

vīsō, -ere, vīsī.

vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctum.

volō, velle, voluī (vōlō, vīs,

vult, volumus, vultis, volunt ;

volam ; volēbam ; velim ;

vellem).

voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtum.

NUMERALS

The long vowels are marked.

| <i>Cardinal.</i> | <i>Ordinal.</i> |
|--------------------|------------------|
| I ūnus, -a, -um | prīmus |
| II duo, duae, duo | secundus |
| III trēs, tria | tertius |
| IV quattuor | quārtus |
| V quīnque | quīntus |
| VI sex | sextus, |
| VII septem | septimus |
| VIII octō | octāvus |
| IX novem | nōnus |
| X decem | decimus |
| XI ūndecim | ūndecimus |
| XII duodecim | duodecimus |
| XIII tredecim | tertius decimus |
| XIV quattuordecim | quārtus decimus |
| XV quīndecim | quīntus decimus |
| XVI sēdecim | sextus decimus |
| XVII septendecim | septimus decimus |
| XVIII duodēvigintī | duodēvīcēsimus |
| XIX ūndēvigintī | ūndēvīcēsimus |
| XX vīgintī | vīcēsimus |
| XXI vīgintī ūnus | vīcēsimus prīmus |

The long vowels are marked.

| Cardinal. | Ordinal. |
|----------------------|--------------------|
| XXII vīgintī duo | vicēsīmus secundus |
| XXVIII duodētrīgintā | duodētrīcēsīmus |
| XXIX undētrīgintā | undētrīcēsīmus |
| XXX trīgintā | trīcēsīmus |
| XL quadrāgintā | quadrāgēsīmus |
| L quīnquāgintā | quīnquāgēsīmus |
| LX sexāgintā | sexāgēsīmus |
| LXX septuāgintā | septuāgēsīmus |
| LXXX octōgintā | octōgēsīmus |
| XC nōnāgintā | nonāgēsīmus |
| C centum | centēsīmus |
| CC ducentī, -ae, -a | ducentēsīmus |
| CCC trecentī | trecentēsīmus |
| CCCC quadringentī | quadringentēsīmus |
| D quīngentī | quīngentēsīmus |
| DC sēscentī | sēscentēsīmus |
| DCC septingentī | septingentēsīmus |
| DCCC octingentī | octingentēsīmus |
| DCCCC nōngenti | nōngentēsīmus |
| M mīlle | millēsīmus |
| MM duo mīlia | bis millēsīmus |

ūnus is like *bonus*, but has gen. *ūnūs*, dat. *ūnī*.

| | | | | |
|---------------------|--------|--------|------|--------|
| duo | duae | duo | trēs | tria |
| duo <i>and</i> duōs | duās | duo | | trium |
| duōrum | duārum | duōrum | | tribus |
| duōbus | duābus | duōbus | | |

ducentī, *trecentī*, etc., are like *bonus*, but have gen. pl. *ducentum*, *trecentum*, etc.

The long vowels are marked.

Mīlle is used as an indeclinable adjective in the singular, as a substantive in the plural :

Mīlle virī, mīlle virōs, one thousand men.

Tria mīlia virōrum, ex tribus mīlibus virōrum, 3000 men.

He is a mile away, Mīlle passūs abest.

He is five miles away, Quīnque mīlia passuum abest.

For the Calendar, see **163** to **167** (pp. 181–183).

THE END

WORKS ON LATIN GRAMMAR AND COMPOSITION.

FIRST STEPS TO LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION. By

Rev. G. RUST, M.A. Pott 8vo. 1s. 6d. KEY, for Teachers only.

By W. M. YATES. Pott 8vo. 3s. 6d. net.

LATIN PROSE AFTER THE BEST AUTHORS: Cæsar's

Prose. By F. P. SIMPSON, B.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d. KEY, for Teachers only. Globe 8vo. 5s. net.

LATIN PROSE EXERCISES BASED UPON CÆSAR'S

GALLIC WAR. With a Classification of Cæsar's Chief Phrases and Grammatical Notes on Cæsar's Usages. By CLEMENT BRYANS, M.A. Globe 8vo. 2s. 6d. KEY, for Teachers only. Globe 8vo. 4s. 6d. net.

HINTS TOWARDS LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION. By

A. W. PORTS, M.A., LL.D., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. Extra fcap. 8vo. 3s.

PASSAGES FOR TRANSLATION INTO LATIN PROSE.

Edited with Notes and References to the above. By the Same. Extra fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d. KEY, for Teachers only. 2s. 6d. net.

SHORT EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION

AND EXAMINATION PAPERS IN LATIN GRAMMAR. By Rev. H. BELCHER, LL.D.

PART I. Pott 8vo. 1s. 6d. KEY, for Teachers only. Pott 8vo. 3s. 6d. net.

PART II. On the Syntax of Sentences, with an Appendix, including Exercises in Latin Idioms, etc. Pott 8vo. 2s. KEY, for Teachers only. Pott 8vo. 3s. net.

SERMO LATINUS. A Short Guide to Latin Prose Composition.

By Prof. J. P. POSTGATE, Litt.D. Globe 8vo. 2s. 6d. KEY to "Selected Passages." Globe 8vo. 4s. 6d. net.

EXERCISES IN LATIN VERSE OF VARIOUS KINDS.

By Rev. G. PRESTON. Globe 8vo. 2s. 6d. KEY, for Teachers only. Globe 8vo. 5s. net.

AN INTRODUCTION TO LATIN ELEGIAC VERSE

COMPOSITION. By J. H. LUPTON, Sur-Master of St. Paul's School. Globe 8vo. 2s. 6d. KEY TO PART II. (XXV.-C.). Globe 8vo. 3s. 6d. net.

AN INTRODUCTION TO LATIN LYRIC VERSE COM-

POSITION. By the Same. Globe 8vo. 3s. KEY, for Teachers only. Globe 8vo. 4s. 6d. net.

A FIRST LATIN VERSE BOOK. By W. E. P. PANTIN, M.A.

Globe 8vo. 1s. 6d. KEY, for Teachers only. 4s. net.

MACMILLAN'S ELEMENTARY LATIN-ENGLISH DIC-

TIONARY. By Rev. G. H. NALL, M.A. 3s. 6d.

ENGLISH-LATIN AND LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIO-

NARIES. By Prof. C. D. YONGE. Each sold separately, 3s. 6d.; or complete, 7s. 6d.

MACMILLAN AND CO., LTD., LONDON.

WORKS ON LATIN GRAMMAR AND COMPOSITION.

THE STUDENT'S COMPANION TO LATIN AUTHORS.

By GEORGE MIDDLETON, M.A., and THOMAS R. MILLS, M.A.
Crown 8vo. 6s.

AN INTRODUCTION TO LATIN TEXTUAL EMENDATION,

based on the text of Plautus. By W. M. LINDSAY, M.A.
Globe 8vo. 3s. 6d.

A SHORT MANUAL OF COMPARATIVE PHILOLOGY

FOR CLASSICAL STUDENTS. By P. GILES, M.A. Crown 8vo.
10s. 6d.

LATIN PHRASE BOOK.

By C. MEISSNER. Translated by
H. W. AUDEN, M.A. Globe 8vo. 4s. 6d.

A GRAMMAR OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE, from Plautus

to Suetonius. By H. J. ROBY, M.A. Part I. Sounds, Inflections,
Word-formation, Appendices. Crown 8vo. 9s. Part II. Syntax,
Prepositions, etc. 10s. 6d.

SCHOOL LATIN GRAMMAR.

By H. J. ROBY, M.A. Crown
8vo. 5s.

AN ELEMENTARY LATIN GRAMMAR.

By H. J. ROBY, M.A., and Professor A. S. WILKINS, Litt.D. Globe 8vo. 2s. 6d.

FIRST LATIN GRAMMAR.

By M. C. MACMILLAN, M.A.
Fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d.

LATIN GRAMMAR.

By Professor B. L. GILDERSLEEVE and
GONZALEZ LODGE. Third Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s.

LATIN ACCIDENCE AND EXERCISES, arranged for

Beginners. By W. WELCH and C. G. DUFFIELD. Pott 8vo. 1s. 6d.

EXERCISES IN UNSEEN TRANSLATION IN LATIN.

By the Same. Pott 8vo. 1s. 6d.

MACMILLAN'S LATIN COURSE :—

FIRST PART. By A. M. COOK, M.A., Assistant Master at St.
Paul's School. Globe 8vo. 3s. 6d.

SECOND PART. By A. M. COOK, M.A., and W. E. P. PANTIN, M.A.
New and Enlarged Edition. Globe 8vo. 4s. 6d.

THIRD PART. By W. E. P. PANTIN, M.A. Globe 8vo.

KEY, for Teachers only. Globe 8vo.

MACMILLAN'S SHORTER LATIN COURSE :—

FIRST PART. By A. M. COOK, M.A. Globe 8vo. 1s. 6d. KEY,
for Teachers only. 4s. 6d. net.

SECOND PART. By A. M. COOK, M.A., and W. E. P. PANTIN,
M.A. Globe 8vo. 2s. KEY, for Teachers only. 4s. 6d. net.

MACMILLAN'S LATIN READER. A Latin Reader for the

Lower Forms in Schools. By H. J. HARDY, M.A. Globe 8vo. 2s. 6d.

MACMILLAN AND CO., LTD., LONDON.



LaL.Gr
P1975m

182098

Author Pantin, W.E.P.

Title MacMillan's Latin course, third part.

**University of Toronto
Library**

**DO NOT
REMOVE
THE
CARD
FROM
THIS
POCKET**

Acme Library Card Pocket
LOWE-MARTIN CO. LIMITED

